All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Hyundai reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment. As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.
CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR HYUNDAI

Your Hyundai should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Hyundai and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the U.S. Department of Transportation and other federal or state agencies.

TWO-WAY RADIO OR CELLULAR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or cellular telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your EQUUS dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.
SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE. These titles indicate the following:

⚠ WARNING
This indicates that a situation may result in harm, serious injury or death to you or other persons if the warning is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the warning.

⚠️ CAUTION
This indicates that a situation may result in damage to your vehicle or its equipment if the caution is not heeded. Follow the advice provided with the caution.

✿ NOTICE
This indicates that interesting or helpful information is being provided.
FOREWORD

Thank you for choosing EQUUS. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discriminating people who drive EQUUS. The advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each EQUUS we build is something of which we’re very proud.

Your Owner’s Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new EQUUS. It is suggested that you read it carefully because the information it contains can contribute greatly to the satisfaction you receive from your new car.

The manufacturer also recommends that all service and maintenance on your car be performed by an authorized EQUUS dealer. EQUUS dealers are prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

HYUNDAI MOTOR AMERICA

⚠️ CAUTION
Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Hyundai specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 8-4 and 8-8 in the Vehicle Specifications and Consumer Information section of the Owner’s Manual.

Note: Because future owners will also need the information included in this manual, if you sell this EQUUS, please leave the manual in the vehicle for their use. Thank you.

Copyright 2013 Hyundai Motor America. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Hyundai Motor America.
Guide to Hyundai Genuine Parts

1. What are Hyundai Genuine Parts?
Hyundai Genuine Parts are the same parts used by Hyundai Motor Company to manufacture vehicles. They are designed and tested for the optimum safety, performance, and reliability to our customers.

2. Why should you use genuine parts?
Hyundai Genuine Parts are engineered and built to meet rigid manufacturing requirements. Using imitation, counterfeit or used salvage parts is not covered under the Hyundai New Vehicle Limited Warranty or any other Hyundai warranty.

3. How can you tell if you are purchasing Hyundai Genuine Parts?
In addition, any damage to or failure of Hyundai Genuine Parts caused by the installation or failure of an imitation, counterfeit or used salvage part is not covered by any Hyundai Warranty.

Look for the Hyundai Genuine Parts Logo on the package (see below).
Hyundai Genuine Parts exported to the USA are packaged with labels written only in English.
Hyundai Genuine Parts are only sold through authorized EQUUS dealerships.
## Index

### A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A/V Mode</td>
<td>4-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS)</td>
<td>4-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced smart cruise control system</td>
<td>5-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced vehicle safety management (VSM)</td>
<td>5-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air bag warning label</td>
<td>3-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air bag warning light</td>
<td>3-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air bags</td>
<td>3-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air bag warning label</td>
<td>3-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air bag warning light</td>
<td>3-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain air bag</td>
<td>3-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver's and passenger's front air bag</td>
<td>3-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver's knee air bag</td>
<td>3-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupant classification system</td>
<td>3-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>3-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side impact air bag</td>
<td>3-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS components and functions</td>
<td>3-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air cleaner</td>
<td>7-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic climate control system</td>
<td>4-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm system</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antenna</td>
<td>4-167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-lock brake system (ABS)</td>
<td>5-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armrest (rear seat)</td>
<td>3-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Around view monitoring system (AVM)</td>
<td>4-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCC/LDWS mode</td>
<td>4-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashtray</td>
<td>4-159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audio remote control</td>
<td>4-168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto defogging system</td>
<td>4-152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto hold</td>
<td>5-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto light/AFLS position</td>
<td>4-120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic climate control system</td>
<td>4-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air conditioning</td>
<td>4-145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air Conditioning refrigerant label</td>
<td>4-149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air intake control</td>
<td>4-142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic heating and air conditioning</td>
<td>4-136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control air filter</td>
<td>4-148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate information screen selection</td>
<td>4-146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fan speed control</td>
<td>4-145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual heating and air conditioning</td>
<td>4-137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode selection</td>
<td>4-139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OFF mode</td>
<td>4-146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature control</td>
<td>4-141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 zone control</td>
<td>4-137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift lock override</td>
<td>5-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift lock system</td>
<td>5-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sports mode</td>
<td>5-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aux, USB and iPod® port</td>
<td>4-166</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bag hanger</td>
<td>4-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>7-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery replacement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Card key</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart key</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery saver function</td>
<td>4-119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before driving</td>
<td>5-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binding arbitration</td>
<td>8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blind spot detection system (BSD)</td>
<td>5-64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>7-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake system</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-lock brake system (ABS)</td>
<td>5-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto hold</td>
<td>5-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric parking brake (EPB)</td>
<td>5-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic stability control (ESC)</td>
<td>5-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill-start assist control (HAC)</td>
<td>5-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power brakes</td>
<td>5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulb replacement</td>
<td>7-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulb wattage</td>
<td>8-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Button start/stop, see engine start/stop button</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior care</td>
<td>7-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire care</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center console storage</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central door lock switch</td>
<td>4-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certification label</td>
<td>8-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire chains</td>
<td>5-79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>7-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child restraint system</td>
<td>3-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower anchor system</td>
<td>3-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seat belt</td>
<td>3-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tether anchor system</td>
<td>3-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child-protector rear door lock</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control air filter</td>
<td>7-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control system seat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seat</td>
<td>3-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seat</td>
<td>3-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothes hanger</td>
<td>4-163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined instrument, see instrument cluster</td>
<td>4-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact spare tire</td>
<td>6-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact spare tire replacement</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer information</td>
<td>8-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool and warm box</td>
<td>4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant</td>
<td>7-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling fluid, see engine coolant</td>
<td>7-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crankcase emission control system</td>
<td>7-99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Camera (Rear view)</td>
<td>4-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacities (Lubricants)</td>
<td>8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Card key</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cruise control system, see advanced smart cruise control system</td>
<td>Driver's air bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cup holder</td>
<td>Driving at night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curtain air bag</td>
<td>Driving in flooded areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashboard illumination, see instrument panel illumination</td>
<td>Driving in the rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashboard, see instrument cluster</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daytime running light</td>
<td>Economical operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defogging (Windshield)</td>
<td>Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with HomeLink® system and compass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defroster (Rear window)</td>
<td>Electric parking brake (EPB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defrosting (Windshield)</td>
<td>Electronic controlled suspension (ECS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td>Electronic hydraulic power steering (EHPS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display illumination, see instrument panel illumination</td>
<td>Electronic stability control (ESC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displays, see instrument cluster</td>
<td>Emergency commodity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door courtesy lamp</td>
<td>Emergency starting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door locks</td>
<td>Jump starting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central door lock switch</td>
<td>Emergency while driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child-protector rear door lock</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drinks holders, see cup holders</td>
<td>Engine compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drive mode integrated control system</td>
<td>Engine compartment fuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECO mode</td>
<td>Engine coolant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNOW mode</td>
<td>Engine coolant temperature gauge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPORT mode</td>
<td>Engine number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver position memory system</td>
<td>Engine number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>7-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine overheating</td>
<td>6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine start/stop button</td>
<td>5-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine will not start</td>
<td>6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporative emission control System</td>
<td>7-99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust emission control system</td>
<td>7-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanation of scheduled maintenance items</td>
<td>7-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior overview</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front</td>
<td>2-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear</td>
<td>2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flat tire</td>
<td>6-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing tires</td>
<td>6-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact spare tire</td>
<td>6-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jack and tools</td>
<td>6-15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Removing and storing the spare tire</td>
<td>6-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor mat anchor(s)</td>
<td>4-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>7-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>7-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>7-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fog light</td>
<td>4-123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front seat adjustment</td>
<td>3-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Economy</td>
<td>4-94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler lid</td>
<td>4-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel gauge</td>
<td>4-69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel requirements</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse switch</td>
<td>7-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>7-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine compartment fuse</td>
<td>7-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse switch</td>
<td>7-61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse/relay panel description</td>
<td>7-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel fuse</td>
<td>7-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges</td>
<td>4-67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass antenna</td>
<td>4-167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box lamp</td>
<td>4-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazard warning flasher</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hazardous driving conditions</td>
<td>5-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head up display (HUD)</td>
<td>4-109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight (Headlamp) escort function</td>
<td>4-119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight bulb replacement</td>
<td>7-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight leveling device</td>
<td>4-124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight position</td>
<td>4-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight welcome</td>
<td>4-133</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Headrest</th>
<th>3-7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front seat</td>
<td>3-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear seat</td>
<td>3-17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated steering wheel</td>
<td>4-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heater</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic climate control system</td>
<td>4-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-beam operation</td>
<td>4-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height adjustment</td>
<td>3-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Highway driving</td>
<td>5-76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hill-start assist control (HAC)</td>
<td>5-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hood</td>
<td>4-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>4-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to use this manual</td>
<td>1-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immobilizer system</th>
<th>4-9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indicator light</td>
<td>4-104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information mode</td>
<td>4-73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside rearview mirror</td>
<td>4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument cluster</td>
<td>4-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gauges</td>
<td>4-67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel illumination</td>
<td>4-68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD display control</td>
<td>4-66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel fuse</td>
<td>7-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrument panel overview</td>
<td>2-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior care</td>
<td>7-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior features</td>
<td>4-159</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## J

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ashtray</th>
<th>4-159</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aux, USB and iPod® port</td>
<td>4-166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bag hanger</td>
<td>4-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clothes hanger</td>
<td>4-163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cup holder</td>
<td>4-160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor mat anchor(s)</td>
<td>4-164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage net (holder)</td>
<td>4-165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power outlet</td>
<td>4-162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear curtain</td>
<td>4-165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear mirror</td>
<td>4-161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunvisor</td>
<td>4-161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior light</td>
<td>4-129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door courtesy lamp</td>
<td>4-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box lamp</td>
<td>4-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map lamp (front)</td>
<td>4-129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map lamp (rear)</td>
<td>4-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room lamp (front)</td>
<td>4-129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room lamp (rear)</td>
<td>4-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk room lamp</td>
<td>4-131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirror lamp</td>
<td>4-132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior light welcome</td>
<td>4-133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior overview</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## J

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jack and tools</th>
<th>6-15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jump starting</td>
<td>6-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
K

Keys
- Smart key ........................................ 4-4
- Card key ......................................... 4-4
- Battery replacement ......................... 4-11
- Knee air bag .................................... 3-57

L

Label
- Air bag warning label ............................ 3-73
- Certification label ............................... 5-86
- Refrigerant label ................................. 8-7
- Tire and loading information label ........ 5-82
- Tire sidewall labeling ......................... 7-50
- Tire specification and pressure label .... 8-7
- Vehicle certification label .................... 8-6
- Lane departure warning system (LDWS) .... 5-57
- Lap/shoulder belt ............................... 3-28
- LCD display .................................... 4-71
- A/V Mode ........................................ 4-72
- ASCC/LDWS mode .............................. 4-72
- Information mode ............................... 4-73
- LCD modes ..................................... 4-71
- Trip computer mode ......................... 4-72
- Turn by turn mode ............................ 4-73
- User settings mode ......................... 4-75
- Warning messages .............................. 4-83
- LCD display control ......................... 4-66
- LCD modes ..................................... 4-71
- Light bulbs .................................... 7-74
- Lighting ........................................... 4-119
- AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) ... 4-125
- Auto light/AFLS position .................... 4-120
- Battery saver function ....................... 4-119
- Daytime running light ....................... 4-124
- Front fog light .................................. 4-123
- Headlight (Headlamp) escort function .... 4-119
- Headlight leveling device ................. 4-124
- Headlight position ......................... 4-121
- High-beam operation ....................... 4-121
- Parking light position ....................... 4-121
- Turn signals .................................... 4-122
- Lower anchor system ....................... 3-4
- Lubricants and capacities ................. 8-4
- Luggage net (holder) ......................... 4-165

M

Maintenance
- Maintenance services ....................... 7-4
- Owner maintenance ......................... 7-6
- Scheduled maintenance service .......... 7-8
- Tire maintenance ............................. 7-49
- Maintenance schedule ..................... 7-8
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maintenance services</strong>……………………………………..7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Map lamp</strong>………………..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front ……………………………………………………………..4-129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear ………………………………………………………………4-130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mirrors</strong>……………………………………………………..4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with HomeLink® system and compass …………..4-43,51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside rearview mirror …………………………………………..4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside rearview mirror …………………………………………4-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse parking aid function …………………………………4-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moonroof</strong>, see sunroof ……………………………………..4-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multimedia system</strong>…………………………………………4-167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glass antenna …………………………………………………4-167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel audio control …………………………………4-168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Occupant classification system</strong>………………..3-52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Odometer</strong>……………….4-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oil (Engine)</strong>……………….7-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outside rearview mirror</strong>………………4-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Outside temperature gauge</strong>………………4-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Overheating</strong>……………….6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Owner maintenance</strong>……………….7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking assist system</strong>………………4-112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parking light position</strong>………………4-121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passenger's air bag</strong>………………3-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power brakes</strong>………………5-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power outlet</strong>………………4-162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power steering fluid</strong>………………7-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power trunk</strong>………………4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Power window lock button</strong>………………4-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre-safe seat belt (PSB)</strong>………………3-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre-tensioner seat belt</strong>………………3-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Puddle lamp welcome</strong>………………4-133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear console storage</strong>………………4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear curtain</strong>………………4-165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear door window curtains</strong>………………4-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear mirror</strong>………………4-161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear seat adjustment</strong>………………3-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rear view camera</strong>………………4-117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommended cold tire inflation pressures</strong>………………7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommended lubricants and capacities</strong>………………8-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recommended SAE viscosity number</strong>………………8-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Refrigerant label</strong>………………8-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Replacement light bulb</strong>………………7-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reporting safety defects</strong>………………8-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reverse parking aid function</strong>………………4-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Road warning</strong>………………6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hazard warning flasher</strong>………………6-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Rocking the vehicle ........................................ 5-73
Room lamp ................................................. 4-129
  Front ..................................................... 4-129
  Rear ...................................................... 4-130
Rotation (Tire) ............................................ 7-47
Scheduled maintenance service ......................... 7-8
Seat belt warning .......................................... 3-25
Seat belts .................................................. 3-23
  Height adjustment ...................................... 3-27
  Lap/shoulder belt ...................................... 3-28
  Pre-safe seat belt (PSB) ............................... 3-31
  Pre-tensioner seat belt ............................... 3-28
Seat belt warning .......................................... 3-25
Seat cooler .................................................. 3-9
  Front seat .............................................. 3-9
  Rear seat ............................................... 3-21
Seat warmer ................................................ 3-21
  Front seat .............................................. 3-9
  Rear seat ............................................... 3-21
Seatback pocket .......................................... 3-10
Seats ........................................................ 3-2
  Armrest (rear seat) .................................... 3-21
  Driver position memory system .................... 3-9
  Front seat adjustment ................................ 3-4
  Headrest (front seat) .................................. 3-7
Headrest (rear seat) .................................... 3-17
Rear seat adjustment .................................... 3-11
Seat cooler (front seat) .................................. 3-9
Seat cooler (rear seat) .................................. 3-21
Seat warmer (front seat) ................................ 3-9
Seat warmer (rear seat) ................................ 3-21
Shift lock system ........................................ 5-15
Side impact air bag ....................................... 3-62
Smart key ................................................... 4-4
Smooth cornering ......................................... 5-74
Spare tires ............................................... 5-78
  Changing tires ........................................ 6-16
  Compact spare tire .................................... 6-21
  Compact spare tire replacement .................... 7-49
  Removing and storing the spare tire ............... 6-16
Special driving conditions ............................. 5-73
  Driving at night ....................................... 5-75
  Driving in flooded areas ............................. 5-76
  Driving in the rain .................................... 5-75
  Hazardous driving conditions ..................... 5-73
  Highway driving ....................................... 5-76
  Rocking the vehicle .................................. 5-73
  Smooth cornering ..................................... 5-74
Speedometer .............................................. 4-67
Sports mode ............................................... 5-14
SRS components and functions ......................... 3-48
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Starting difficulties, see engine will not start</td>
<td>6-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel</td>
<td>4-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electronic hydraulic power steering (EHPS)</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated steering wheel</td>
<td>4-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>4-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt steering/Telescope steering</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel audio control</td>
<td>4-168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage compartment</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center console storage</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cool and warm box</td>
<td>4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear console storage</td>
<td>4-156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunglass holder</td>
<td>4-155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunglass holder</td>
<td>4-155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunroof</td>
<td>4-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunvisor</td>
<td>4-161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tachometer</td>
<td>4-67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tether anchor system</td>
<td>3-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theft-alarm system</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tilt steering/Telescope steering</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire and loading information label</td>
<td>5-82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire chains</td>
<td>5-79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)</td>
<td>6-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire rotation</td>
<td>7-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire specification and pressure label</td>
<td>8-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tires and wheels</td>
<td>7-44, 8-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Checking tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>7-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact spare tire replacement</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low aspect ratio tire</td>
<td>7-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recommended cold tire inflation pressures</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire care</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire maintenance</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire replacement</td>
<td>7-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire rotation</td>
<td>7-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire sidewall labeling</td>
<td>7-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire terminology and definitions</td>
<td>7-55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire traction</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel alignment and tire balance</td>
<td>7-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheel replacement</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Towing</td>
<td>6-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trailer towing</td>
<td>5-89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmission shift indicator</td>
<td>4-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip A/B</td>
<td>4-93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip computer</td>
<td>4-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel Economy</td>
<td>4-94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip A/B</td>
<td>4-93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trip computer mode</td>
<td>4-72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-powered trunk</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power trunk</td>
<td>4-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency trunk safety release</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trunk room lamp ................................. 4-131
Turn by turn mode ............................... 4-73
Turn signals ................................. 4-122

User settings mode ......................... 4-75

Vanity mirror lamp ............................. 4-132
Vehicle break-in process .................... 1-5
Vehicle certification label .................. 8-6
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders 1-6
Vehicle identification number (VIN) ....... 8-6
Vehicle load limit ............................. 5-82
Certification label ............................. 5-86
Tire and loading information label ........ 5-82
Vehicle weight ............................... 5-88

Warning light ............................... 4-96
Warning messages ........................... 4-83
Washer fluid ................................. 7-30
Welcome system .............................. 4-133
Headlight .................................. 4-133
Interior light ................................ 4-133
Puddle lamp ................................ 4-133
Wheel alignment and tire balance ........ 7-47
Wheel replacement ......................... 7-48
Windows .................................. 4-27
Power window lock button ................. 4-29
Rear door window curtains ................. 4-28
Windshield defrosting and defogging ...... 4-150
Windshield washers ........................ 4-128
Windshield wipers ........................... 4-126
Winter driving ............................... 5-78
Snow tires .................................. 5-78
Tire chains .................................. 5-79
Wiper blades ................................. 7-36
Wipers and washers ......................... 4-126
Windshield washers ......................... 4-128
Windshield wipers ......................... 4-126
Introduction

How to use this manual ......................... 1-2
Fuel requirements ............................... 1-3
Vehicle break-in process ....................... 1-5
Vehicle data collection and event data recorders . 1-6
We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimize the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. A good place to start is the index; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight sections plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

Symbols used in this manual

**WARNING**
A WARNING indicates a situation in which harm, serious bodily injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.

**CAUTION**
A CAUTION indicates a situation in which damage to your vehicle could result if the caution is ignored.

*NOTICE*
A NOTICE indicates interesting or helpful information is being provided.

Symbols used in illustrations

Safety symbol
The symbol means to "Avoid" or "Do not do anything".

Arrows
Indicates the location.

Indicates the action (pressing, turning, etc.) or outcome of an operation.
Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimize exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

Your new vehicle is designed to use only unleaded fuel having an octane number ((R+M)/2) of 87 or higher.

For improved vehicle performance, premium unleaded fuel with a Pump Octane Rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 95) or higher is recommended.

**CAUTION**

*Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified. (Consult an authorized EQUUS dealer for further details.)*

**WARNING**

- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refueling.
- Tighten the cap until it clicks once, otherwise the Malfunction Indicator Light "" will illuminate.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

**Gasoline containing alcohol and methanol**

Gasohol, a mixture of gasoline and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol) are being marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded gasoline.

Do not use gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use gasoline or gasohol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems, including hard to start, rough running at cold start, malfunction indicator light or damage to the fuel system.

Discontinue using gasohol of any kind if drivability problems occur. Vehicle damage or drivability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer’s warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Gasohol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Gasoline or gasohol containing methanol.
3. Lead fuel or leaded gasohol.
**Introduction**

"E85" fuel is an alternative fuel comprised of 85 percent ethanol and 15 percent gasoline, and is manufactured exclusively for use in Flexible Fuel Vehicles. "E85" is not compatible with your vehicle. Use of "E85" will result in poor engine performance and damage to your vehicle's engine and fuel system. HYUNDAI recommends that customers do not use fuel with an ethanol content exceeding 10 percent.

---

**Do not use methanol**

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

---

**CAUTION**

*Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage to the fuel system or any performance problems caused by the use of "E85" fuel.*

---

**CAUTION**

*Never use gasohol which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any gasohol product which impairs drivability.*

---

**Fuel Additives**

HYUNDAI recommends that you use good quality gasolines treated with detergent additives such as TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, which help prevent deposit formation in the engine. These gasolines will help the engine run cleaner and enhance performance of the Emission Control System. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the website (www.toptiergas.com).

For customers who do not use TOP Tier Detergent Gasoline regularly, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, additives that you can buy separately may be added to the gasoline.

If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive added to the fuel tank at every 7,500 miles or 12 months is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.
**Operation in foreign countries**
If you are going to drive your vehicle in another country, be sure to:
- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Determine that acceptable fuel is available.

**VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS**
No special break-in period is needed. By following a few simple precautions for the first 600 miles (1,000 km) you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.
- Do not race the engine.
- While driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Don't let the engine idle longer than 3 minutes at one time.
- Don't tow a trailer during the first 1,200 miles (2,000 km) of operation.

⚠️ **CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING**
Items contained in motor vehicles or emitted from them are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or reproductive harm. These include:
- Gasoline and its vapors
- Engine exhaust
- Used engine oil
- Interior passenger compartment components and materials
- Component parts which are subject to heat and wear
In addition, battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead, lead compounds and other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm.
This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.
Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview (front) ......................... 2-2
Exterior overview (rear) ......................... 2-3
Interior overview ................................. 2-4
Instrument panel overview ...................... 2-5
Engine compartment ............................. 2-6
Your vehicle at a glance

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW

1. Towing hook ............................................6-25
2. Hood ...................................................4-30
3. Front windshield wiper blades .............................................4-126, 7-36
4. Sunroof ...................................................4-35
5. Outside rearview mirror ...........................................4-59
6. Door locks ...............................................4-13
7. Tires and wheels ...........................................7-44, 8-3
8. Headlamps ...............................................4-119, 7-75
9. Front fog light ............................................4-123, 7-75

* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
1. Glass antenna and Defroster..........................4-167, 4-134
2. High mounted stop light.............................7-82
3. Trunk....................................................4-18
4. Rear combination light............................7-81
5. Rearview camera..................................4-117
6. Parking assist system............................4-112
7. Towing hook...........................................6-25
8. Fuel filler lid ........................................4-32
9. Door locks.............................................4-13
10. Window ...............................................4-25

* The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
INTERIOR OVERVIEW

1. Inside door handle ......................................4-14
2. Driver’s seat control ..................................3-5
3. Driver position memory system button .................4-38
4. Power window switch ..................................4-25
5. Outside rearview mirror control .........................4-59
6. Fuel-filler lid opener ....................................4-32
7. BSD (Blind spot detection) on/off button ..............5-64
8. Parking assist system on/off button ......................4-112
9. Instrument panel illumination control lever .............4-65
10. HUD (Head up display) on/off button ..................4-109
11. ESC (Electric parking brake) off button ...............5-32
12. Trunk lid release switch or power trunk main control switch 4-18
13. EPB (Electric parking brake) switch ..................5-20
14. Brake pedal .............................................5-18
15. Hood lever ..............................................4-30
16. Seats ......................................................3-2
17. Tilt steering/Telescope control lever .................4-40
18. Heated steering wheel on/off button .................4-41
19. Steering wheel .........................................4-40

★ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OVI013003
### INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Instrument cluster</td>
<td>4-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lighting control lever</td>
<td>4-120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Wiper and washer control lever</td>
<td>4-126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Horn</td>
<td>4-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Driver's front air bag</td>
<td>3-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Engine Start/Stop Button</td>
<td>5-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Hazard warning flasher</td>
<td>6-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Climate control system</td>
<td>4-135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Shift lever</td>
<td>5-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Climate control system seat</td>
<td>3-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Around view monitoring system on/off button</td>
<td>4-118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Vehicle height control button</td>
<td>5-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Rear curtain folding button</td>
<td>4-165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Center console storage box</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Passenger's front air bag</td>
<td>3-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Glove box</td>
<td>4-154</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The actual shape may differ from the illustration.*
Your vehicle at a glance

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

1. Engine coolant reservoir .................. 7-25
2. Radiator cap ................................ 7-27
3. Brake fluid reservoir ....................... 7-28
4. Air cleaner .................................. 7-31
5. Engine oil dipstick .......................... 7-23
6. Engine oil filler cap ........................ 7-23
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir .... 7-30
8. Fuse box ..................................... 7-59
9. Power steering fluid reservoir .......... 7-29
10. Jump start connector ...................... 6-5
11. Chamber air cleaner ....................... 7-32

※ The actual shape may differ from the illustration.
Safety features of your vehicle

Seats .................................................. 3-2
  • Front seat adjustment ......................... 3-4
  • Rear seat adjustment ......................... 3-11
Seat belts .............................................. 3-23
  • Seat belt restraint system ................... 3-23
  • Pre-tensioner seat belt ....................... 3-28
  • Pre-safe seat belt (PSB) ...................... 3-31
  • Seat belt precautions ......................... 3-32
  • Care of seat belts ............................... 3-35
Child restraint system ......................... 3-36
  • Rear-Facing child restraint ................. 3-38
  • Forward-Facing child restraints .......... 3-38
Air bag - advanced supplemental restraint system ................................. 3-45
  • How does the air bag system operate ...... 3-46
  • SRS components and functions ............. 3-48
  • Occupant classification system .......... 3-52
  • Main components of occupant classification system . 3-52
  • Driver's and passenger's front air bag .... 3-57
  • Side impact air bag .................... 3-62
  • Curtain air bag .......................... 3-63
  • SRS Care .................................. 3-70
  • Air bag warning label .................. 3-73
Safety features of your vehicle

SEATS

Driver’s seat
(1) Seat sliding forward or backward**/Seat height and cushion tilting adjustment
(2) Seat cushion length adjustment
(3) Seatback angle adjustment
(4) Headrest height adjustment
(5) Driver position memory system
(6) Climate control system seat*
(7) Lumbar support adjustment

Front passenger’s seat
(8) Seat sliding forward or backward/Seat height and cushion tilting adjustment*
(9) Seatback angle adjustment
(10) Headrest height adjustment
(11) Climate control system seat*
Rear seat
(12) Seat sliding forward or back-ward adjustment with seatback angle adjustment
(13) Climate control system seat*
(14) Armrest
(15) Leg support angle adjustment
(16) Headrest height adjustment
(17) Easy access
(18) Front passenger side walk-in seat
(19) Rear relaxation seat system
(20) Lumber support adjustment
(21) Return switch

*: if equipped
**: The height of the driver’s headrest is automatically adjusted simultaneously with the driver's seat sliding adjustment operation.

⚠️ WARNING - Loose objects
Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Do not place anything under the front seats.

⚠️ WARNING
Do not use a seat cushion that reduces friction between the seat and passenger. The passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt can't operate normally.

⚠️ WARNING - Driver responsibility for passengers
Riding in a vehicle with the seatback reclined could lead to serious or fatal injury in an accident. If a seat is reclined during an accident, the occupant's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt applying great force to the unprotected abdomen. Serious or fatal internal injuries could result. The driver must advise the passenger to keep the seatback in an upright position whenever the vehicle is in motion.

⚠️ WARNING - Driver’s seat
• Never attempt to adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage. (Continued)
(Continued)

- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position of the seatback. Storing items against a seatback or in any other way interfering with proper locking of a seatback could result in serious or fatal injury in a sudden stop or collision.

- Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips. This is the best position to protect you in case of an accident.

- In order to avoid unnecessary and perhaps severe air bag injuries, always sit as far back as possible from the steering wheel while maintaining comfortable control of the vehicle. We recommend that your chest be at least 10 inches (250 mm) away from the steering wheel.

---

**WARNING**

- Do not adjust the seat while wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.

- Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.

- Do not put a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may exit out of the lighter and cause a fire.

---

**Front seat adjustment**

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the doors. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so as to easily control the steering wheel, pedals and switches on the instrument panel.

---

**WARNING**

The power seat is operable with the ignition OFF. Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the car.

---

**WARNING**

Do not adjust the seat while wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.
CAUTION

• The power seat is driven by electric motors. Stop the motor operation once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.

• When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary battery drain, don’t adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.

• Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.

Forward and rearward

Push the control switch forward or rearward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

When adjusting the seat position, the headrest will be adjusted simultaneously to the proper position.

Seat cushion height and tilt

Pull the front portion of the control switch up to raise or push down to lower the front part of the seat cushion. Pull the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or push down to lower the rear part of the seat cushion. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.
Safety features of your vehicle

**Seatback angle**

Push the upper part of the control switch forward or rearward to move the seatback to the desired angle. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

**Cushion length adjustment (for driver’s seat)**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat cushion to the desired length. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

**Lumbar support (for driver’s seat)**

The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch on the side of the driver's seat. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support, or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support. Move the support position up and down by pressing the switch (3) or (4).
Headrest

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with a headrest for the occupant's safety and comfort. The headrest not only provides comfort for the driver and front passenger, but also helps to protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

**WARNING**

- For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. For this reason, the use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seatback is not recommended.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.
- Do not adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion.

Forward and rearward adjustment

The headrest may be adjusted forward or rearward by pulling the lower part of the headrest forward or rearward to the desired detent in the direction of the arrow. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.
Safety features of your vehicle

Adjusting the headrest up and down
Push the control switch up to raise or down to lower the headrest. Release the switch once the headrest reaches the desired position.

Removal
To remove the headrest, raise it as far as it can go by pulling the switch up (1) then pull the headrest up (2). To reinstall the headrest, put the headrest poles (3) into the holes at the highest position by pulling the switch up (1) and then pull the switch down (4) until the headrest moves to the lowest position.

To install the headrest securely, move the headrest up and down 2 or 3 times by pulling the switch up and down.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not reinstall the headrest at the incorrect position other than the highest position and do not force it. It causes damage to the headrest.

⚠️ WARNING
- If you don't install the headrest securely, the active headrest may not operate normally. When reinstalling the headrest, install it securely as noted in the procedures.
- Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.

⚠️ WARNING
- If you don't install the headrest securely, the active headrest may not operate normally. When reinstalling the headrest, install it securely as noted in the procedures.
- Make sure the headrest locks in position after adjusting it to properly protect the occupants.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to the occupants may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against neck injuries when properly adjusted.
Safety features of your vehicle

Electronic active headrest
The electronic active headrest is designed to trigger the headrest forward and upward when impact sensor detects a rear impact. This helps to prevent the driver's and front passenger's heads from moving backward and thus helps minimize neck injuries.

⚠️ CAUTION
The active headrest is a safety device to reduce injuries from a rear impact. Do not hit or pull the headrest intentionally.

Climate control system seat (if equipped)
This feature cools or warms the front seats by blowing air through small vent hole on the surface of the seats and seatbacks.
While the engine is running, push the rear portion of the switch to cool or warm the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.
When the operation of the climate control system seat is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

- Each time you push the switch, the airflow changes as follows:
  OFF → HIGH (HIGH) → MIDDLE (MIDDLE) → LOW (LOW)

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the climate control system operating, the climate control system seat will turn OFF.
- The climate control system seat defaults to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position.
- With the climate control system seat ON to cool or warm the front seats, the system turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.
Safety features of your vehicle

⚠️ CAUTION

- The climate control system seat is a supplementary cooling and warming system. Use the climate control seat when the climate control system is on. Using the climate control seat for prolonged periods of time with the climate control system off could cause the climate control seat performance to be reduced.
- When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the seats.
- Do not spill liquid such as water or beverages on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks, or the air vent holes may be blocked and prevented from working properly.

(Continued)

- Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. The air vent may not work properly as the air intake can be blocked.
- When the air vent does not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Seatback pocket

The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front passenger’s and driver’s seatbacks.

⚠️ WARNING - Seatback pockets

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure vehicle occupants.
Safety features of your vehicle

Rear seat adjustment
The rear seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the door.

⚠️ WARNING
For proper operation of the occupant classification system:
• Do not place any items cumulatively weighing over 2.2 lbs (1 kg) in the front passenger’s seatback pocket or on the passenger’s seat.
• Do not hang anything onto the front passenger seatback.

⚠️ WARNING
The power seat is operable with the Engine Start/Stop Button in OFF. Therefore, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.

⚠️ CAUTION
• The power seat is driven by electric motors. Stop operating once the adjustment is completed. Excessive operation may damage the electrical equipment.

(Continued)
• When in operation, the power seat consumes a large amount of electrical power. To prevent unnecessary battery drain, don’t adjust the power seat longer than necessary while the engine is not running.
• Do not operate two or more power seat control switches at the same time. Doing so may result in power seat motor or electrical component malfunction.

(Continued)
Safety features of your vehicle

⚠️ WARNING
Use extreme caution so that hands or other objects are not caught in the seat mechanisms while the seat is moving.
Do not adjust the seat while wearing seat belts. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on the abdomen.

⚠️ WARNING
Do not operate the rear power seat while the child seat is installed.

**Forward, backward and seatback angle**

Push the control switch forward or backward to move the seat to the desired position. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

**Easy access switch**

Your vehicle features an easy access system to provide convenient access for rear passengers. When opening the rear door, the rear seats will move rearward automatically to provide easier access for passengers. This easy access system will operate only when the control switch is in "ON" position.
Additional switches for adjusting the front passenger seat (if equipped)

**Type A**
After pressing the FRONT switch, you can adjust the front passenger seat forward and backward (1), and adjust the seat back angle (2).

**Type B, C**
Additional switches are provided to move the front passenger seat forward and backward (1), and adjust the seatback angle (2) from the rear seats.

**Type D**
While pressing the button, the front passenger seat moves forward and backward, and adjusts the seatback angle.
Lumbar support (for rear right and left passenger’s seat) (if equipped)

- For right side:
  Press the R switch.
  The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
  To move the support position up or down, press the switch (3) or (4).

- For left side:
  Press the L switch.
  The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
  To move the support position up or down, press the switch (3) or (4).

Rear switches operating limitation (if equipped)

When the RSE LOCKED button is illuminated, the switch lock function of the rear seat operates.

* RES : Rear Seat Entertainment

✿ The RSE LOCKED is controlled by AVN. Refer to the AVN manual.
Safety features of your vehicle

VIP Convenience function
(3 seat configuration)

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the rear right seat or front passenger seat.

Front passenger side walk-in seat
Press the switch (1):
The seatback will adjust.
Press the switch (2):
The seat will move forward and backward.

Rear relaxation seat system
Press the switch (3):
The front passenger seat and the rear right side passenger seat will move to its original position. After the operation is completed, a beep will sound.
Press the switch (4):
The front passenger seat will move forward and the seatback will fold automatically. Then the rear right side passenger seat seatback will lean towards the back of the vehicle. After the operation is completed, a beep will sound once.
VIP Convenience function
(2 seat configuration)

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the rear right seat or front passenger seat.

Front passenger side walk-in seat
Press the switch (1):
The passenger seat will move forward and the seatback will fold automatically.
If you want to use as seat, press the switch (3).

Rear relaxation seat system
Press the switch (2):
The front passenger seat will move forward and the seatback will fold automatically. And then the rear right seat cushion will move forward and the leg support will move up. While operating the system, if you press the switch again, the system will stop. When the operation is completed, a beep will sound once.
Return function
While the seat is moving by relax mode operation, if the switch (3) is pressed shortly, the rear seat moves to the rearmost position. However, if the switch (3) is pressed more than 1 second, the rear seat moves to the rearmost position and the leg support moves down. The front passenger seat will automatically move to its original position. When the operation is completed, a beep will sound once.

Leg support
- Press the switch (4):
  The leg support will move down.
- Press the switch (5):
  The leg support will move up.

Headrest
The rear seat is equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the occupant's safety and comfort. The headrest not only provides comfort for passengers, but also helps to protect the head and neck in the event of a collision.

WARNING
- For maximum effectiveness in case of an accident, the headrest should be adjusted so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the center of gravity of an occupant's head. Generally, the center of gravity of most people's head is similar with the height of the top of their eyes. Also, adjust the headrest as close to your head as possible. The use of a cushion that holds the body away from the seat-back is not recommended.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the headrests removed as severe injury to an occupant may occur in the event of an accident. Headrests may provide protection against severe neck injuries when properly adjusted.
Adjusting the headrest up and down
To raise the headrest, pull it up to the desired position (1). To lower the headrest, push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support and lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Adjusting the headrest up and down (electric) (if equipped)
Push the control switch up to raise or down to lower the headrest. Release the switch once the headrest reaches the desired position.

Forward and backward adjustment
The headrest may be adjusted forward or backward by pulling the lower part of the headrest forward or backward to the desired detent in the direction of the arrow. Adjust the headrest so that it properly supports the head and neck.
Wing-out
For rear outboard passenger's comfort, the ends of the headrest can be adjusted inward.

Armrest (if equipped)
To use the armrest, pull the knob (1) (if equipped) forward from the seatback.

Cup holder (if equipped)
To use the cup holder push button (1).
Safety features of your vehicle

Storage compartment (if equipped)
To use the storage compartment, push button (2). Close the cover after use.

Rear tower console storage (if equipped)
These compartments can be used to store small items.
To open the upper console storage, press button (2) and to open the lower console storage, press button (1). Close the tower console storage after use.

**WARNING**
- To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the tower console storage closed while driving.
- Close the lower and upper lids while the vehicle is moving. Failure to observe this instruction could cause death or serious injury.
Climate control system seat (if equipped)

This feature cools or warms the rear seats by blowing air through small vent hole on the surface of the seats and seatbacks.

While the engine is running, push the rear portion of the switch to cool or warm the rear seats. When the operation of the the climate control system seat is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

- Each time you push the button, the airflow changes as follows:

   OFF → HIGH( ) → MIDDLE( ) → LOW( )

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the climate control system seat operating, the seat cooler will turn OFF.
- The climate control system seat defaults to the OFF position whenever the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned on.
- With the climate control system seat ON to cool or warm the rear seats, the system turns off or on automatically depending on the seat temperature.

⚠️ CAUTION

- The climate control system seat is a supplementary cooling and warming system. Use the climate control seat when the climate control system is on. Using the climate control seat for prolonged periods of time with the climate control system off could cause the climate control seat performance to be reduced.
- When cleaning the seats, do not use an organic solvent such as thinner, benzene, alcohol and gasoline. Doing so may damage the surface of the seats.
- Do not spill liquid such as water or beverages on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks, or the air vent holes may be blocked and prevented from working properly.

(Continued)
(Continued)

- Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. The air vent may not work properly as the air intake can be blocked.

- When the air vent does not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

(Continued)

- Before using the climate control system seat, remove the sticker attached to the rear air vent. If not, the cooling and warming performance may decrease.
SEAT BELTS
Seat belt restraint system

⚠️ WARNING

• For maximum restraint system protection, the seat belts must always be used whenever the car is moving.
• Seat belts are most effective when seatbacks are in the upright position.
• Children age 12 and under must always be properly restrained in the rear seat. Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child over 12 must be seated in the front seat, he/she must be properly belted and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

(Continued)

• Never wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. An improperly positioned shoulder belt can cause serious injuries in a crash. The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over your shoulder across your collarbone.
• Avoid wearing twisted seat belts. A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt webbing is straight and not twisted.
• Be careful not to damage the belt webbing or hardware. If the belt webbing or hardware is damaged, replace it.

⚠️ WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and the lap belt portion should be worn low across the front of the pelvis; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the occupant.

(Continued)
WARNING

- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.
- When you fasten the seat belt, be careful not to latch the seat belt in the buckles of the other seat. It's very dangerous and you may not be protected by the seat belt properly.
- Do not unfasten the seat belt and do not fasten and unfasten the seat belt repeatedly while driving. This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

(Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

(Continued)

When fastening the seat belt, make sure that the seat belt does not pass over objects that are hard or can break easily.
- Make sure there is nothing in the buckle to interfere with the seat belt latch mechanism. Otherwise seat belt may not be fastened securely.

(Continued)
Safety features of your vehicle

Seat belt warning (for driver’s seat)

The driver’s seat belt warning light and chime will activate to the following table when the ignition switch is in “ON” position.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions</th>
<th>Vehicle Speed</th>
<th>Light-Blink</th>
<th>Chime-Sound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unbuckled</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buckled</td>
<td></td>
<td>6 seconds</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buckled → Unbuckled</td>
<td>Below 3 mph (5 km/h)</td>
<td>6 seconds</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 mph~6 mph</td>
<td>6 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Above 6 mph (10 km/h)</td>
<td>6 sec. on / 24 sec. off (11 times)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbuckled</td>
<td>Above 6 mph (10 km/h)</td>
<td>6 seconds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Below 3 mph (5 km/h)</td>
<td>Stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Warning pattern repeats 11 times with an interval of 24 seconds. If the driver’s seat belt is buckled, the light will stop within 6 seconds and chime will stop immediately.

*2 The light will stop within 6 seconds and chime will stop immediately.

Seat belt warning (for front passenger’s seat)

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger’s seat belt warning light will blink each time you turn the ignition switch ON regardless of belt fastening. If the passenger’s seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the passenger’s seat belt warning light will blink until the belt is fastened if occupant presence is detected.
Safety features of your vehicle

3-point system with emergency locking retractor

To fasten your seat belt:
Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length only after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and move with you. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

⚠️ WARNING
Riding in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger as to the proper seating instructions as contained in this manual.

* NOTICE
If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.
Safety features of your vehicle

Height adjustment
You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of 4 positions for maximum comfort and safety.
The shoulder portion should be adjusted so that it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door and not your neck.
To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.
To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) while pressing the height adjuster button (2).
Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

⚠️ WARNING
- Verify the shoulder belt anchor is locked into position at the appropriate height. Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face. Improperly positioned seat belts can cause serious injuries in an accident.
- Failure to replace seat belts after an accident could leave you with damaged seat belts that will not provide protection in the event of another collision leading to personal injury or death. Replace your seat belts after being in an accident as soon as possible.

⚠️ WARNING
You should place the lap belt portion as low as possible and snugly across your hips, not on your waist. If the lap belt is located too high on your waist, it may increase the chance of injury in the event of a collision. Both arms should not be under or over the belt. Rather, one should be over and the other under, as shown in the illustration.
Never wear the seat belt under the arm nearest the door.
When using the rear center seat belt, ALWAYS use the buckle with the CENTER mark.

To release the seat belt:
Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle. When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor.
If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Pre-tensioner seat belt

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts. The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure that the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal collisions. The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal collision is severe enough.

**WARNING**
For your safety, be sure that the belt webbing is not loose or twisted and always sit properly on your seat.
When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner activates, the load limiter inside the pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

**WARNING**

Do not put anything near the buckle. Placing objects near the buckle can adversely affect the buckle pre-tensioner and may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING**

To obtain maximum benefit from a pre-tensioner seat belt:

1. The seat belt must be worn correctly and adjusted to the proper position. Please read and follow all of the important information and precautions about your vehicle’s occupant safety features – including seat belts and air bags – that are provided in this manual.

2. Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.

The seat belt pre-tensioner system consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

1. SRS air bag warning light
2. Retractor pre-tensioner assembly
3. SRS control module
4. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly
NOTICE

- Both the driver's and front passenger's pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollovers. The pre-tensioners will not be activated if the seat belts are not being worn at the time of the collision.
- When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.
- Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be breathed for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.

NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS air bag is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belt, and the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the ignition switch has been turned to the ON position, and then it should turn off.

CAUTION

If the pre-tensioner seat belt is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if there is no malfunction of the SRS air bag. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the ignition switch is turned ON, or if it remains illuminated after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized EQUUS dealer inspect the pre-tensioner seat belt and SRS air bag system as soon as possible.

WARNING

- Pre-tensioners are designed to operate only one time. After activation, pre-tensioner seat belts must be replaced. All seat belts, of any type, should always be replaced after they have been worn during a collision.
- The pre-tensioner seat belt assembly mechanisms become hot during activation. Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated.
- Do not attempt to inspect or replace the pre-tensioner seat belts yourself. This must be done by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Do not strike the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies.

(Continued)
(Continued)

- Do not attempt to service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt system in any manner.
- Improper handling of the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies, and failure to heed the warnings not to strike, modify, inspect, replace, service or repair the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies may lead to improper operation or inadvertent activation and serious injury.
- Always wear the seat belts when driving or riding in a motor vehicle.
- If the vehicle or pre-tensioner seat belt must be discarded, contact an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Pre-safe seat belt (PSB)
(if equipped)

The purpose of the pre-safe seat belt is to tighten the seat belt during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is sensed.

⚠️ CAUTION
The pre-safe seat belt activates only when the passenger is wearing his/her seat belt.

The pre-safe seat belt warning light will illuminate if a malfunction is detected with your pre-safe seat belt.

Have the system checked if:
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
In order to maximize the safety of the passenger, the pre-safe seat belt system operates as below:

- The seat belt is tightened when:
  - Emergency braking situation occurs
  - Losing control of the vehicle
  - The passenger leans to one side
- The seat belt vibrates when:
  - The Lane Departure Warning System (if equipped) detects the vehicle has moved out of its lane.

Other functions are winding a loose seat belt after unfastening the seat belt.

### Seat belt precautions

**WARNING**

All occupants of the vehicle must wear their seat belts at all times. Seat belts and child restraints reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries for all occupants in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Without a seat belt, occupants could be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle. Properly worn seat belts greatly reduce these hazards. Even with advanced air bags, unbelted occupants can be severely injured by a deploying air bag. Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

**CAUTION**

Do not be surprised when the seat belt vibrates. It's not a malfunction but a warning for your safety.

---

**Infant or small child**

All 50 states have child restraint laws which require children to travel in approved child restraint devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of child restraints differs among states, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your state, and where you are travelling. Infant and child restraints must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat. For more information refer to the "Child Restraint Systems" Section.

**WARNING**

Every person in your vehicle needs to be properly restrained at all times, including infants and children. Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior. Always use a child restraint appropriate for your child's height and weight.
NOTICE
Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly re-strained in the rear seat by a child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Before buying any child restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213. The restraint must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the child restraint for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint Systems" section in this chapter.

Larger children

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat must always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. Children are afforded the most safety in the event of an accident when they are restrained by a proper restraint system and/or seat belts in the rear seat.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position. If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the center of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat.

WARNING - Shoulder belts on small children

- Never allow a shoulder belt to be in contact with a child's neck or face while the vehicle is in motion.
- If seat belts are not properly worn and adjusted on children, there is a risk of death or serious injury.
Safety features of your vehicle

**Restraint of pregnant women**

Pregnant women should wear lap/shoulder belt assemblies whenever possible according to specific recommendations by their doctors. The lap portion of the belt should be worn as snugly and low as possible on the hips, not across the abdomen.

**Injured person**

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. When this is necessary, you should consult a physician for recommendations.

**One person per belt**

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

**Do not lie down**

To reduce the chance of injuries in the event of an accident and to achieve maximum effectiveness of the restraint system, all passengers should be sitting up and the front and rear seats should be in an upright position when the car is moving. A seat belt cannot provide proper protection if the person is lying down in the rear seat or if the front and rear seats are in a reclined position.

**WARNING - Pregnant women**

Pregnant women must never place the lap portion of the safety belt over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located or above the abdomen where the belt could seriously injure or even cause the death of the unborn child during an impact.

**WARNING**

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant’s hips will slide under the lap belt causing serious internal injuries or the occupant’s neck could strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.
Care of seat belts
Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to assure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

Periodic inspection
All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry
Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts
The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. Additional questions concerning seat belt operation should be directed to an authorized EQUUS dealer.
CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Children under age 13 must always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimize the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden maneuver. According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Even with advanced air bags, children can be seriously injured or killed. Children too large for a child restraint must use the seat belts provided.

All 50 states have child restraint laws which require children to travel in approved child restraint devices. The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of child restraints differs among states, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your state, and where you are travelling. Child restraint systems must be properly placed and installed in the rear seat. You must use a commercially available child restraint system that meets the requirements of the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).

Child restraint systems are generally designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt, or by a LATCH system in the rear seats of the vehicle.

Children could be injured or killed in a crash if their restraints are not properly secured.

WARNING

- A child restraint system must be placed in the rear seat. Never install a child or infant seat on the front passenger's seat. Should an accident occur and cause the passenger-side air bag to deploy, it could severely injure or kill an infant or child seated in an infant or child seat. Thus only use a child restraint in the rear seat of your vehicle.

(Continued)

- A seat belt or child restraint system can become very hot if it is left in a closed vehicle on a sunny day, even if the outside temperature does not feel hot. Be sure to check the seat cover and buckles before placing a child there.

- When the child restraint system is not in use, store it in the luggage area or fasten it with a seat belt so that it will not be thrown forward in the case of a sudden stop or an accident.

- Children may be seriously injured or killed by an inflating air bag. All children, even those too large for child restraints, must ride in the rear seat.
**WARNING**

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries:

- Children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. A child riding in the front passenger seat can be forcefully struck by an inflating air bag resulting in serious or fatal injuries.
- Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer’s instructions for installation and use of the child restraint.
- Always make sure the child seat is secured properly in the car and your child is securely restrained in the child seat.
- Never hold a child in your arms or lap when riding in a vehicle. The violent forces created during a crash will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the car’s interior.

(Continued)

- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child causing serious internal injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in a vehicle – not even for a short time. The car can heat up very quickly, resulting in serious injuries to children inside. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or lock themselves or others inside the vehicle.
- Never allow two children, or any two persons, to use the same seat belt.
- Children often squirm and reposition themselves improperly. Never let a child ride with the shoulder belt under their arm or behind their back. Always properly position and secure children in the rear seat.

(Continued)

- Never allow a child to stand-up or kneel on the seat or floor of a moving vehicle. During a collision or sudden stop, the child can be violently thrown against the vehicle’s interior, resulting in serious injury.
- Never use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate security in an accident.
- Do not operate a rear power seat while the child seat is installed. The power seat can be broken.
- After an accident, have an authorized EQUUS dealer check the child restraint system, seat belt, tether anchor and lower anchor.
- If there is not enough space to place the child restraint system because of the driver’s seat, install the child restraint system in the rear right seat.

(Continued)
Rear-Facing child restraint

A rear-facing child restraint provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the restraint and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under age one must always ride in a rear-facing child restraint. There are different types of rear-facing child restraints: infant-only seats can only be used rear-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 child restraints typically have higher height and weight limits for the rear-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rear-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using restraints in the rear-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the child restraint's manufacturer. It's the best way to keep them safe. Once your child has outgrown the rear-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a forward-facing child restraint with a harness.

Forward-Facing child restraints

A forward-facing child restraint provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing child restraint with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your child restraint's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing child restraint, your child is ready for a booster seat.

WARNING

NEVER install a child or infant restraint in the front passenger's seat. Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.
The automatic locking mode will help prevent the normal movement of the child in the vehicle from causing the seat belt to loosen and compromise the child restraint system. To secure a child restraint system, use the following procedure.

To install a child restraint system on the outboard or center rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the child restraint system on the seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the restraint, following the restraint manufacturer’s instructions. Be sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.

2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound. Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.
3. Pull the shoulder portion of the seat belt all the way out. When the shoulder portion of the seat belt is fully extended, it will shift the retractor to the “Automatic Locking” (child restraint) mode.

4. Slowly allow the shoulder portion of the seat belt to retract and listen for an audible “clicking” or “ratcheting” sound. This indicates that the retractor is in the “Automatic Locking” mode. If no distinct sound is heard, repeat steps 3 and 4.

5. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the child restraint system while feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.

6. Push and pull on the child restraint system to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place. If it is not, release the seat belt and repeat steps 2 through 6.

7. Double check that the retractor is in the “Automatic Locking” mode by attempting to pull more of the seat belt out of the retractor. If you cannot, the retractor is in the “Automatic Locking” mode.
To remove the child restraint, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the restraint and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

**WARNING - Automatic locking mode**

The lap/shoulder belt automatically returns to the “emergency locking mode” whenever the belt is allowed to retract fully. Therefore, the preceding seven steps must be followed each time a child restraint is installed. If the retractor is not in the Automatic Locking mode, the child restraint can move when your vehicle turns or stops suddenly. A child can be seriously injured or killed if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car, including setting the retractor to the Automatic Locking mode.

When the seat belt is allowed to retract to its fully stowed position, the retractor will automatically switch from the “Automatic Locking” mode to the emergency lock mode for normal adult usage.

**Securing a child restraint seat with “Tether Anchor” system**

Child restraint hook holders are located on the package tray.
1. Route the child restraint seat tether strap over the seatback. For vehicles with adjustable headrests, route the tether strap under the headrest and between the headrest posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.

2. Connect the tether strap hook to the appropriate child restraint hook holder and tighten to secure the child restraint seat.

**WARNING**

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if the child restraint is not properly anchored to the car and the child is not properly restrained in the child restraint. Always follow the child seat manufacturer’s instructions for installation and use.

**WARNING - Tether strap**

Never mount more than one child restraint to a single tether anchor or to a single lower anchorage point. The increased load caused by multiple seats may cause the tethers or lower anchorage points to break, causing serious injury or death.

**WARNING - Child restraint anchorage**

- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.
- The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

**WARNING - Child restraint check**

Check that the child restraint system is secure by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Incorrectly fitted child restraints may swing, twist, tip or separate causing death or serious injury.
Securing a child restraint seat with child seat lower anchor system

Some child seat manufacturers make child restraint seats that are labeled as LATCH or LATCH-compatible child restraint seats. LATCH stands for "Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children". These seats include two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to two LATCH anchors at specific seating positions in your vehicle. This type of child restraint seat eliminates the need to use seat belts to attach the child seat in the rear seats.

Child restraint symbols are located on the left and right rear seat backs to indicate the position of the lower anchors for child restraints.

**WARNING**

- When using the vehicle's "LATCH" system to install a child restraint system in the rear seat, all unused vehicle rear seat belt metal latch plates or tabs must be latched securely in their seat belt buckles and the seat belt webbing must be retracted behind the child restraint to prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts. Unlatched metal latch plates or tabs may allow the child to reach the unretracted seat belts which may result in strangulation and a serious injury or death to the child in the child restraint.

- Do not place anything around the lower anchors. Also make sure that the seat belt is not caught in the lower anchors.
LATCH anchors have been provided in your vehicle. The LATCH anchors are located in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration. There is no LATCH anchor provided for the center rear seating position.

The LATCH anchors are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install child restraint seats with LATCH or LATCH-compatible attachments.

Once you have installed the LATCH child restraint, assure that the seat is properly attached to the LATCH and tether anchors.

Also, test the child restraint seat before you place the child in it. Tilt the seat from side to side. Also try to tug the seat forward. Check to see if the anchors hold the seat in place.

⚠️ CAUTION

*Do not allow the rear seat belt webbing to get scratched or pinched by the child-seat latch and LATCH anchor during the installation.*

⚠️ WARNING

If the child restraint is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being seriously injured or killed in a collision greatly increases.

⚠️ WARNING - LATCH lower anchors

LATCH lower anchors are only to be used with the left and right rear outboard seating positions. Never attempt to attach a LATCH equipped seat in the center seating position. You may damage the anchors or the anchors may fail and break in a collision.
(1) Driver's front air bag  
(2) Passenger's front air bag  
(3) Side impact air bag  
(4) Curtain air bag  
(5) Driver's knee air bag  

⚠️ WARNING  
Even in vehicles with air bags, you and your passengers must always wear the seat belts provided in order to minimize the risk and severity of injury in the event of a collision or rollover.
How does the air bag system operate

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate in the event of a severe frontal or side collision in order to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate.
  Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle hits in the collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant.
  It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident.
  It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.
- To help provide protection in a severe collision, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of the extremely short time in which a collision occurs and the need to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries in a severe collision and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.
  However, air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.
- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.

**WARNING**

- To avoid severe personal injury or death caused by deploying air bags in a collision, the driver should sit as far back from the steering wheel air bag as possible (at least 10 inches (250 mm) away). The front passengers should always move their seats as far back as possible and sit back in their seat.
- Air bags inflate instantly in the event of collision, and passengers may be injured by the air bag expansion force if they are not in proper position.
- Air bag inflation may cause injuries which normally include facial or bodily abrasions, injuries from broken glasses or burns by the air bag inflation gasses.
Noise and smoke
When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and they leave smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing due to the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. Open your doors and/or windows as soon as possible after impact in order to reduce discomfort and prevent prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder.
Though the smoke and powder are non-toxic, they may cause irritation to the skin (eyes, nose and throat, etc). If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and consult a doctor if the symptom persists.

WARNING
When the air bags deploy, the air bag related parts in the steering wheel and/or instrument panel and/or in both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors and in the front seatbacks are very hot. To prevent injury, do not touch the air bag storage area’s internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated.

Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger’s seat.

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in the front passenger’s seat. If the air bag deploys, it would impact the rear-facing child restraint, causing serious or fatal injury.
In addition, do not place front-facing child restraints in the front passenger’s seat either. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it could cause serious or fatal injuries to the child.
Safety features of your vehicle

WARNING

- Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!
- Never put a child restraint in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it can cause serious or fatal injuries.
- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats of a vehicle equipped with side and/or curtain air bags, be sure to install the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and securely lock the child restraint system in position. Inflation of side and/or curtain air bags could cause serious injury or death to an infant or child.

The SRS consists of the following components:
1. Driver's front air bag module
2. Passenger's front air bag module
3. Side impact air bag modules
4. Curtain air bag modules
5. Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
6. Air bag warning light
7. SRS control module (SRSCM)
8. Front impact sensors
9. Side impact sensors
10. Driver's knee air bag module

11. “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF” indicator (Front passenger's seat only)
12. Occupant classification system (Front passenger's seat only)
13. Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buckle sensors
14. Anchor pre-tensioner assembly

The SRSCM continually monitors all SRS components while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.
The SRS air bag warning light "coln" on the instrument panel will illuminate for about 6 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position, after which the SRS air bag warning light "coln" should go out.

**WARNING**

If any of the following conditions occurs, this indicates a malfunction of the SRS. Have an authorized EQUUS dealer inspect the air bag system as soon as possible.

- The light does not turn on briefly when you turn the ignition ON.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.
- The light comes on while the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the ignition switch is in ON position.

The front air bag modules are located in the center of the steering wheel, in the front passenger's panel above the glove box and in the driver's side knee bolster. When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.
Safety features of your vehicle

Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers then allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

**WARNING**
- Do not install or place any accessories (drink holder, CD holder, sticker, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box in a vehicle with a passenger's air bag. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the passenger's air bag inflates.

(Continued)
The SRS can function only when the ignition switch is in the ON position. If the SRS air bag warning light " ● " does not illuminate, or continuously remains on after illuminating for about 6 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position, or after the engine is started, comes on while driving, the SRS is not working properly. If this occurs, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Before you replace a fuse or disconnect a battery terminal, turn the Engine Start/Stop Button to the OFF position. Never remove or replace the air bag related fuse(s) when the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position. Failure to heed this warning will cause the SRS air bag warning light " ● " to illuminate.
Safety features of your vehicle

Occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with an occupant classification system in the front passenger's seat.
The occupant classification system is designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated front passenger and determine if the passenger's front air bag should be enabled (may inflate) or not. The driver's front air bag is not affected or controlled by the occupant classification system.

Main components of occupant classification system

- A detection device located within the front passenger seat cushion.
- Electronic system to determine whether the passenger air bag systems (both front and side) should be activated or deactivated.
- A warning light located on the instrument panel which illuminates the words "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicating the front passenger air bag system is deactivated.
- The instrument panel air bag indicator light is interconnected with the occupant classification system.

If the front passenger seat is occupied by a person that the system determines to be of adult size, and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF indicator will be turned off and the front passenger's air bag will be able to inflate, if necessary, in frontal crashes.

You will find the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator on the center facia panel. This system detects the conditions 1–4 in the following table and activates or deactivates the front passenger air bag based on these conditions.
Always be sure that you and all vehicle occupants are seated properly and wearing the seat belt properly for the most effective protection by the air bag and the seat belt.

- The OCS may not function properly if the passenger takes actions which can affect the classification system. These include:
  1. Failing to sit in an upright position.
  2. Leaning against the door or center console.
  3. Sitting towards the sides or the front of the seat.
  4. Putting their legs on the dashboard or resting them on other locations which reduce the passenger weight on the front seat.
  5. Wearing the safety belt improperly.
  6. Reclining the seat back.

### Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition detected by the occupant classification system</th>
<th>Indicator/Warning light</th>
<th>Devices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot;PASS AIR BAG OFF&quot; indicator light</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRS warning light</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front passenger air bag</td>
<td>Activated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Adult *1</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Child restraint system<em>2</em>3</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Unoccupied</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. There is a malfunction in the system</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1) The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2) Never install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*3) The PASSENGER AIR BAG “OFF” indicator may turn on or off when a child under age13 (with or without child restraint system) or without child restraint system) sits in the front passenger seat. This is a normal condition.

**WARNING**

Riding in an improper position or placing weight on the front passenger's seat when it is unoccupied by a passenger adversely affects the occupant classification system (OCS).
- Never sit with hips shifted towards the front of the seat.
- Never place feet or legs on the dashboard.
- NEVER ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.
- NEVER lean on the door or center console or sit on one side of the front passenger seat.
If the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator is on when an adult is seated in the front passenger seat, press the Engine Start/Stop Button to the OFF position and ask the passenger to sit properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor). Restart the engine and have the person remain in that position. This will allow the system to detect the person and to enable the passenger air bag. If the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator is still on, ask the passenger to move to the rear seat.

**WARNING**
Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a crash. If the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator remains illuminated after the adult passenger repositions themselves properly and the car is restarted, it is recommended that passenger move to the rear seat because the passenger's front air bag will not deploy. Front seat passengers must stay properly seated to avoid serious injury from a deploying air bag.

**NOTICE**
The "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator illuminates after the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed to the ON position or after the engine is started. If the front passenger seat is occupied, the OCS will then classify the front passenger after several more seconds.

**WARNING**
Do not put a heavy load on the front passenger seat. Do not place any items under the front passenger seat. Any of these could interfere with proper sensor operation.

**WARNING**
• Even though your vehicle is equipped with the occupant classification system, never install a child restraint system in the front passenger's seat. A deploying air bag can forcefully strike a child resulting in serious injuries or death. Any child age 12 and under should ride in the rear seat. Children too large for child restraints should use the available lap/shoulder belts. No matter what type of crash, children of all ages are safer when restrained in the rear seat. (Continued)
Safety features of your vehicle

(Continued)

- If the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated when the front passenger's seat is occupied by an adult and he/she sits properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor), have that person sit in the rear seat.
- Do not modify or replace the front passenger seat. Don't place anything on or attach anything such as a blanket or seat heater to the front passenger seat. This can adversely affect the occupant classification system.
- If you change the weight on the front passenger seat, the PASSENGER “AIR BAG OFF” indicator may turn on or off for a few seconds, disabling or enabling the passenger air bag.

(Continued)

- Do not sit on sharp objects such as tools when occupying the front passenger seat. This can adversely affect the occupant classification system.
- Do not use accessory seat covers on the front seats.
- Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear, as opposed to the front seat. It is recommended that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.
- Air bags can only be used once – have an authorized EQUUS dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment.

(Continued)

- A smaller-stature adult who is not seated correctly (for example: seat excessively reclined, leaning on the door or center console, or hips shifted forward in the seat) can cause a condition where the advanced frontal air bag system senses less weight than if the occupant were seated properly (sitting upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor).

This condition can result in an adult potentially being misclassified and illumination of the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator.
Safety features of your vehicle

**WARNING**

If the occupant classification system is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate because the passenger's front air bag is connected with the occupant classification system. If there is a malfunction of the occupant classification system, the "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF" indicator will not illuminate and the passenger's front air bag will inflate in frontal impact crashes even if there is no occupant in the front passenger's seat. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position, remains illuminated after approximately 6 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized EQUUS dealer inspect the occupant classification system and the SRS air bag system as soon as possible.

**Driver's and passenger's front air bag**

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint (Air Bag) System and the lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The indications of the system's presence are the letters "SRS AIR BAG" embossed on the air bag pad cover in the steering wheel, on the knee bolster below the steering wheel column and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box. The SRS consists of air bags installed under the pad covers in the center of the steering wheel, in the knee bolster below the steering wheel column and the passenger's side front panel above the glove box.
The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle’s driver and/or the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity. The SRS uses sensors to gather information about the driver's seat position, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt usage and impact severity.

**WARNING**

If the occupant classification system is not working properly, the SRS air bag warning light on the instrument panel will illuminate because the SRS air bag warning light is connected with the occupant classification system. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position, remains illuminated after approximately 6 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position, or if it illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized EQUUS dealer inspect the advanced SRS air bag system as soon as possible.

The seat belt buckle sensors determine if the driver and front passenger’s seat belts are fastened. These sensors provide the ability to control the SRS deployment based on whether or not the seat belts are fastened, and how severe the impact is.

The advanced SRS offers the ability to control the air bag inflation within two levels. A first stage level is provided for moderate-severity impacts. A second stage level is provided for more severe impacts.

According to the impact severity, and seat belt usage, the SRSCM (SRS Control Module) controls the air bag inflation. Failure to properly wear seat belts can increase the risk or severity of injury in an accident.
Additionally, your vehicle is equipped with an occupant classification system in the front passenger's seat. The occupant classification system detects the presence of a passenger in the front passenger's seat and will turn off the front passenger's air bag under certain conditions. For more detail, see "Occupant classification system" in this section.

**WARNING**

Do not place any objects underneath the front seats as they could interfere with the occupant classification system.

**WARNING**

If you are considering modification of your vehicle due to a disability, please contact the EQUUS Customer Connect Center at 1-877-378-8727.

**NOTICE**

- Be sure to read information about the SRS on the labels provided on the sun visor.
- Advanced air bags are combined with pre-tensioner seat belts to help provide enhanced occupant protection in frontal crashes. Front air bags are not intended to deploy in collisions in which protection can be provided by the pre-tensioner seat belt.

**WARNING**

Always use seat belts and child restraints – every trip, every time, everyone! Air bags inflate with considerable force and in the blink of an eye. Seat belts help keep occupants in proper position to obtain maximum benefit from the air bag. Even with advanced air bags, improperly belted and unbelted occupants can be severely injured when the air bag inflates.
Always follow the precautions about seat belts, air bags and occupant safety contained in this manual.

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries and receive the maximum safety benefit from your restraint system:

- Never place a child in any child or booster seat in the front seat.
- ABC – Always Buckle Children in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride.

(Continued)
Safety features of your vehicle

(Continued)

- Front and side air bags can injure occupants improperly positioned in the front seats.
- Move your seat as far back as practical from the front air bags, while still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags. Improperly positioned driver and passengers can be severely injured by inflating air bags.
- Never lean against the door or center console – always sit in an upright position.
- Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF” indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a moderate or severe frontal crash.

(Continued)

- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger’s panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.
- Never place covers, blankets or seat warmers on the passenger seat as these may interfere with the occupant classification system.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring or other components of the SRS system.
- Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the “PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF” indicator is illuminated, because the air bag will not deploy in the event of a moderate or severe frontal crash.

(Continued)

- If the SRS air bag warning light remains illuminated while the vehicle is being driven, have an authorized EQUUS dealer inspect the air bag system as soon as possible.
- Air bags can only be used once – have an authorized EQUUS dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment.
- The SRS is designed to deploy the front air bags only when an impact is sufficiently severe and when the impact angle is less than 30° from the forward longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Additionally, the air bags will only deploy once. Seat belts must be worn at all times.
- Front air bags are not intended to deploy in side-impact, rear-impact or rollover crashes. In addition, front air bags will not deploy in frontal crashes below the deployment threshold.

(Continued)
For maximum safety protection in all types of crashes, all occupants including the driver should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash. Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag while the vehicle is in motion.

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash. All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the engine is turned off.

The SRS air bag system must deploy very rapidly to provide protection in a crash. If an occupant is out of position because of not wearing a seat belt, the air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.
Side impact air bag

Your vehicle is equipped with a side impact air bag in each front and outboard rear seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and/or the front and outboard rear passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side impact air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side-impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact. The side impact air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations.

⚠️ WARNING
- The side impact air bag is supplemental to the seat belt systems and is not a substitute for them. Therefore your seat belts must be worn at all times while the vehicle is in motion. The air bags deploy only in certain side impact conditions severe enough to cause significant injury to the vehicle occupants.
- For best protection from the side impact air bag system and to avoid being injured by the deploying side impact air bag, all seat occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belt properly fastened. The driver's hands should be placed on the steering wheel at the 9:00 and 3:00 positions. The passenger' arms and hands should be placed on their laps.
- Do not use any accessory seat covers.

(Continued)
Curtain air bag

Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors. They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

(Continued)

Use of seat covers could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.

Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side impact air bag.

Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself.

Do not place any objects (an umbrella, bag, etc.) between the door and the seat. Such objects may become dangerous projectiles and cause injury if the supplemental side impact air bag inflates.

To prevent unexpected deployment of the side impact air bag that may result in personal injury, avoid impact to the side impact sensor when the ignition switch is on.

(Continued)

If the seat or seat cover is damaged, have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized EQUUS dealer because your vehicle is equipped with side impact air bags and an occupant classification system.

(Continued)
The curtain air bags are designed to deploy only during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and impact. The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact situations, collisions from the front or rear of the vehicle or in most rollover situations.

**WARNING**
- In order for side and curtain air bags to provide the best protection, both front seat occupants and both outboard rear occupants should sit in an upright position with the seat belts properly fastened. Importantly, children should sit in a proper child restraint system in the rear seat.
- When children are seated in the rear outboard seats, they must be seated in the proper child restraint system. Make sure to position the child restraint system as far away from the door side as possible, and secure the child restraint system in a locked position.

(Continued)

- Do not allow the passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and passengers when they are seated on seats equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.
- Never try to open or repair any components of the side curtain air bag system. This should only be done by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Failure to follow the above instructions can result in injury or death to the vehicle occupants in an accident.
Why didn’t my air bag go off in a collision?
There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection.
These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts.

Air bag collision sensors

(1) SRS control module
(2) Front impact sensor
(3) Side impact sensor (front)
(4) Side impact sensor (rear)
Safety features of your vehicle

**WARNING**

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed. This may cause unexpected air bag deployment, which could result in serious personal injury or death.
- If the installation location or angle of the sensors is altered in any way, the air bags may deploy when they should not or they may not deploy when they should, causing severe injury or death.

Therefore, do not try to perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

(Continued)

- Problems may arise if the sensor installation angles are changed due to the deformation of the front bumper, body or B and C pillars where side collision sensors are installed. Have the vehicle checked and repaired by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Your vehicle has been designed to absorb impact and deploy the air bag(s) in certain collisions. Installing bumper guards or replacing a bumper with non-genuine parts may adversely affect your vehicle’s collision and air bag deployment performance.

(Continued)

Air bag inflation conditions

Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.
Side impact and curtain air bags

Side impact and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the strength, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver’s and front passenger’s air bags are designed to inflate only in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side impact and curtain air bags are designed to inflate only in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

Air bag non-inflation conditions

- In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.
Safety features of your vehicle

- Frontal air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved backward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit.

- Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move to the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, frontal air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection. However, side impact and curtain air bags may inflate depending on the intensity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.

- In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.
• Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this "under-ride" situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “under-ride” collisions.

• Air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because air bag deployment would not provide protection to the occupants. However, side impact and curtain air bags may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side impact air bags and curtain air bags.

• Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.
SRS Care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light " ● " does not illuminate, when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed to the ON position, or continuously remains on, have your vehicle immediately inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails must be performed by an authorized EQUUS dealer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

⚠️ WARNING

- Modification to SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure, can adversely affect SRS performance and lead to possible injury.
- Not only the modification of the parts where the SRS sensors are but also the modification of other parts of the vehicle may affect the SRS performance and lead to possible injury.
- For cleaning the air bag pad covers, use only a soft, dry cloth or one which has been moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.
- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box, because any such object could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to inflate.
- If the air bags inflate, they must be replaced by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Do not tamper with or disconnect SRS wiring, or other components of the SRS system. Doing so could result in injury, due to accidental inflation of the air bags or by rendering the SRS inoperative.

(Continued)
Additional safety precautions

- All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor.
- Passengers should not move out of or change seats while the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- Each seat belt is designed to restrain one occupant. If more than one person uses the same seat belt, they could be seriously injured or killed in a collision.
- Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Passengers should not place hard or sharp objects between themselves and the air bags. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap or in your mouth can result in injuries if an air bag inflates.
- Keep occupants away from the air bag covers. All occupants should sit upright, fully back in their seats with their seat belts on and their feet on the floor. If occupants are too close to the air bag covers, they could be injured if the air bags inflate.
- Do not attach or place objects on or near the air bag covers. Any object attached to or placed on the front or side air bag covers could interfere with the proper operation of the air bags.
- Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized EQUUS dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.

If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on the flooring, you shouldn’t try to start the engine; have the car towed to an authorized EQUUS dealer.

If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. An authorized EQUUS dealer knows these precautions and can give you the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions and procedures could increase the risk of personal injury.

If your car was flooded and has soaked carpeting or water on the flooring, you shouldn’t try to start the engine; have the car towed to an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Safety features of your vehicle

- **Do not place items under the front seats.** Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.
- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** The infant or child could be seriously injured or killed in the event of a crash. All infants and children should be properly restrained in appropriate child safety seats or seat belts in the rear seat.

![WARNING]

**WARNING**
- Sitting improperly or out of position can cause occupants to be shifted too close to a deploying air bag, strike the interior structure or be thrown from the vehicle resulting in serious injury or death.
- Always sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centered on the seat cushion with your seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and your feet on the floor.
- Be careful not to cause impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON. The impact may cause the air bags to inflate.

**Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag-equipped vehicle**
If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.
Air bag warning label

Air bag warning labels, some required by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.
# Features of your vehicle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Smart key</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Locking</td>
<td>4-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Unlocking</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trunk unlocking</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Panic button</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Start-up</td>
<td>4-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mechanical key</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Loss of a smart key</td>
<td>4-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Smart key precautions</td>
<td>4-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Record your key number</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Immobilizer system</td>
<td>4-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Restrictions in handling keys</td>
<td>4-10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Battery replacement</td>
<td>4-11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theft-alarm system</td>
<td>4-12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door locks</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• From outside</td>
<td>4-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Power door latch</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• From inside</td>
<td>4-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Auto door lock/unlock features</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Child-protector rear door locks</td>
<td>4-16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trunk</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Non-powered trunk</td>
<td>4-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Power trunk</td>
<td>4-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• To reset the power trunk</td>
<td>4-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trunk lid control button</td>
<td>4-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Emergency trunk safety release</td>
<td>4-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>4-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hood</td>
<td>4-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel filler lid</td>
<td>4-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Opening the fuel filler lid</td>
<td>4-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Closing the fuel filler lid</td>
<td>4-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sunroof</td>
<td>4-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sliding the sunroof</td>
<td>4-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tilting the sunroof</td>
<td>4-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Resetting the sunroof</td>
<td>4-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sunshade</td>
<td>4-37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driver position memory system</td>
<td>4-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Storing position into memory</td>
<td>4-38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Recalling position into memory</td>
<td>4-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Easy access function</td>
<td>4-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steering wheel</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Electronic hydraulic power steering (EHPS)</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tilt steering/Telescope steering</td>
<td>4-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Heated steering wheel</td>
<td>4-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Horn</td>
<td>4-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirrors</td>
<td>4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Interior rearview mirrors</td>
<td>4-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Automatic-dimming function</td>
<td>4-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Compass function</td>
<td>4-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Programming HomeLink®</td>
<td>4-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Outside rearview mirror</td>
<td>4-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reverse parking aid function</td>
<td>4-62</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Welcome system ........................................... 4-133
• Puddle lamp ............................................. 4-133
• Headlight .................................................. 4-133
• Interior light .............................................. 4-133
Defroster ..................................................... 4-134
• Rear window defroster ................................. 4-134
• Front wiper deicer ...................................... 4-134
Automatic climate control system ..................... 4-135
• Automatic heating and air conditioning ............. 4-136
• Manual heating and air conditioning ................. 4-137
• System operation ........................................ 4-146
• Climate control air filter ............................... 4-148
• Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant
  and compressor lubricant .............................. 4-149
Windshield defrosting and defogging ................. 4-150
• Defogging logic .......................................... 4-151
Storage compartments .................................. 4-154
• Center console storage ................................. 4-154
• Glove box .................................................. 4-154
• Sunglass holder ......................................... 4-155
• Rear console storage ................................... 4-156
• Cool and warm box ..................................... 4-156
Interior features ......................................... 4-159
• Ashtray ..................................................... 4-159
• Cup holder ............................................... 4-160
• Sunvisor ..................................................... 4-161
• Rear vanity mirror ....................................... 4-161
• Power outlet .............................................. 4-162
• Clothes hanger .......................................... 4-163
• Bag hanger ................................................. 4-164
• Floor mat anchor(s) ..................................... 4-164
• Luggage net (holder) .................................... 4-165
• Rear curtain .............................................. 4-165
• Aux, USB and iPod® port ............................... 4-166
Multimedia system ....................................... 4-167
• Antenna ..................................................... 4-167
• Steering wheel audio control ......................... 4-168
Your EQUUS uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock a door (and trunk) and even start the engine.

1. Door Lock
2. Door Unlock
3. Trunk Unlock
4. Panic

**WARNING** - Smart key
Leaving children unattended in a vehicle with the smart key is dangerous even if the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ACC or ON position. Children copy adults and they could press the Engine Start/Stop Button. The smart key would enable children to operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious bodily injury or even death. Never leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the Engine is running.

To lock:
1. Close all doors, engine hood and trunk.
2. Either press the door handle button or press the Door Lock button on the Smart Key.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound once. Also the outside rearview mirror will fold.
4. Make sure the doors are locked by checking the position of the door lock button inside the vehicle.
**NOTICE**
The door handle button will only operate when the Smart Key is within 28 in. (0.7 m) from the outside door handle.

Even though you press the outside door handle button, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for three seconds if any of following occur:
- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
- The Engine Start/Stop Button is in ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the trunk is open.

**Unlocking**

To unlock:
1. Carry the Smart Key.
2. Either put your hand in the driver's outside door handle or press the Door Unlock button on the Smart Key.
3. The driver's door will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times. Also the outside rearview mirror will unfold.

**NOTICE**
- The door handle unlocking will only operate when the Smart Key is within 28 in. (0.7 m) from the outside door handle and other people can also open the doors.
- If you put your hand in the front passenger’s outside door handle, while carrying the Smart Key, all doors will unlock.
- If you press the Door Unlock button again within four seconds, then all the doors will unlock.
- After unlocking the doors, the doors will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.
- You can change the system to the central door unlock mode in the User Settings menu of the LCD Display to unlock all the doors when you press the unlock button one time.
Features of your vehicle

Trunk Unlocking
To unlock:
1. Carry the Smart Key.
2. Either press the trunk handle button or press the Trunk Unlock button on the Smart Key for more than one second.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.
Once the trunk is opened and then closed, the trunk will lock automatically.

✽ NOTICE
The power trunk (if equipped) can be operated when the engine is not running. However, the power trunk consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate consecutively (more than approximately 10 times).

Panic Button
Press the Panic button (4) for more than one second. The horn sounds and hazard warning lights flash for about 30 seconds.
To cancel the panic mode, press any button on the Smart Key.

Start-Up
You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to the Engine Start/Stop Button in section 5.

⚠️ CAUTION
To prevent damaging the Smart Key:
• Keep the Smart Key away from water or any liquid. If the Smart Key is inoperative due to exposure to water or other liquids, it will not be covered by your manufacturer’s vehicle warranty.
• Avoid dropping or throwing the Smart Key.
• Protect the Smart Key from extreme temperatures.
**Mechanical Key**
If the Smart Key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the door by using the mechanical key.

**Mechanical Key of Conventional Smart Key**

Depress and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2). Insert the mechanical key in to the key hole on the door.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

**Mechanical Key of Card Type Smart Key**

Push and hold the release lever (1) and remove the mechanical key (2). Insert the mechanical key in to the key hole on the door.

To reinstall the mechanical key, push and hold the release lever (1) and put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

**Loss of a Smart Key**
A maximum of three Smart Keys including Card Type Smart Key can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your Smart Key, you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining key to your authorized EQUUS dealer or tow the vehicle, if necessary.
Features of your vehicle

**Smart key precautions**

- The smart key will not work if any of the following occur:
  - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the smart key.
  - The smart key is near a mobile two-way radio system or a cellular phone.
  - Another vehicle’s smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- When the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key and contact an authorized EQUUS dealer.

- If the Smart Key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phones normal operational signals. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. Avoid placing the Smart Key and your mobile phone in the same pants or jacket pocket and always try to maintain an adequate distance between the two devices.
Features of your vehicle

Record your key number

The key code number is stamped on the key code tag attached to the key set. Should you lose your keys, this number will enable an authorized EQUUS dealer to duplicate the keys easily. Remove the key code tag and store it in a safe place. Also, record the key code number and keep it in a safe and handy place, but not in the vehicle.

Immobilizer system

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine’s fuel system is disabled. When the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position, the Immobilizer System indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognize the coding of the Smart Key.

Press the Engine Start/Stop Button to the OFF position, then press the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position again.

The system may not recognize your Smart Key’s coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e., key chain) is near the Smart Key. The engine may not start because the metal may interrupt the transponder signal from transmitting normally.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of the Smart Key, contact your EQUUS dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

✽ NOTICE
ALWAYS take the Smart Key with you when you leave the vehicle.
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

*NOTICE*
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

Restrictions in Handling Keys

When leaving keys with parking lot and valet attendants, the following procedures will ensure your vehicle's trunk and glove box compartment can only be opened with the mechanical key.

To lock:
1. Remove the mechanical key from the Smart Key.
2. Unlock the glove box by using the mechanical key, then open it.
3. Set the Trunk Lid Control button to the OFF position (not depressed).
4. Close and lock the glove box using the mechanical key.
5. Leave the Smart Key with the attendant and keep the mechanical key with you.

The Smart Key can only be used to start the engine and operate door locks.

To release:
1. Open the glove box with the mechanical key.
2. Set the Trunk Lid Control button to the ON position (depressed).

In this position the trunk lid will open with the Trunk Lid button or the Smart Key.
Battery Replacement

If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Battery Replacement of Conventional Smart Key

Battery Type: CR2032
To Replace the Battery:
1. Pry open the rear cover of the Smart Key.
2. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
3. Reinstall the rear cover of the Smart Key.

Battery Type Replacement of Card Type Smart Key

Battery Type: CR2412
To Replace the Battery:
1. Pull out the battery and battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
3. Reinstall the battery cover and battery.

**NOTICE**
- If you suspect your Smart Key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your Smart Key is not working correctly, contact an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) and regulation(s).
Features of your vehicle

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occurs:

- A door is opened without using the Smart Key.
- The trunk is opened without using the Smart Key.
- The engine hood is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds and the alarm will repeat once more, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the Smart Key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the trunk from outside the vehicle with the Smart Key or by pressing the button on the outside of the door handles with the Smart Key in your possession. The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the trunk, or the hood without using the Smart Key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the hood, the trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the hood, the trunk, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

* NOTICE

- Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle, the alarm will be activated.
- If the vehicle is not disarmed with the Smart Key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and turn the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
DOOR LOCKS
Operating Door Locks From Outside the Vehicle

To lock the doors, press the button on the outside door handle while carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Lock button on the Smart Key.

Put your hand in the driver's outside door handle while carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Unlock button on the Smart Key, the driver's door will unlock. If you put your hand in the front passenger's outside door, all doors will unlock. If you press the Door Unlock button on the Smart Key again within four seconds, then all the doors will unlock.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

NOTICE
- In cold and wet climates, door locks and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.

WARNING
- If you don't close the door securely, the door may open again.
- Be careful that someone's body and hands are not trapped when closing the door.

NOTICE
You can change the system to the central door unlock mode in the User Settings menu of the LCD Display to unlock all the doors when you press the unlock button one time.
Features of your vehicle

Power Door Latch (if equipped)

If a door isn’t closed completely but is closed to the first detent position, the door will close automatically.

⚠️ CAUTION
To reduce the risk of injury:
• Before closing the door, check there are no obstructions in the path of the door.
• Keep your fingers away from the edge of the door or they may become trapped when the power door latch operates.

Operating Door Locks From Inside the Vehicle

With the Door Lock Button:

• To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark (2) on the door lock button will be visible.
• To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
• To open a door, pull the door handle (3) outward.

• If the inner door handle of the driver’s (or front passenger’s) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button is unlocked and door opens.
• Doors cannot be locked if the Smart Key is in the vehicle and any door is open.

∗ NOTICE
If a power door lock ever fails to function while you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:
Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) while simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.
Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.
With the Central Door Lock Switch:

- When pressing the right portion (1) for the driver or the left portion (3) of the switch for the front passenger, all vehicle doors will lock.
- When pressing the left portion (2) for the driver or the right portion (4) of the switch for the front passenger, all vehicle doors will unlock.
- If the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock button (1) or (3) of the central door lock switch is pressed.

⚠️ WARNING

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.

⚠️ WARNING

The doors should always be fully closed and locked while the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.

⚠️ WARNING

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.
Features of your vehicle

**WARNING**

Always secure your vehicle. Leaving your vehicle unlocked increases the potential risk to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle.

To secure your vehicle, while depressing the brake, move the shift lever to the P (Park) position, engage the Parking Brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop Button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the Smart Key with you.

**Auto Door Lock/Unlock Features**

You can modify some of the auto door lock/unlock features from the User Setting Mode. Refer to the User Setting Mode in section 4.

**Child-Protector Rear Door Locks**

The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock (1) is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position ( ), that rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock ( ) the child safety lock.
\\WARNING\\

If children accidentally open the rear doors while the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door safety locks should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.
Features of your vehicle

TRUNK
Non-Powered Trunk

To open:
1. Make sure the shift lever is in P(Park).
2. Then do one of the following:
   - Press the Smart Key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the button on the trunk itself with the Smart Key in your possession.
   - Use the mechanical key.
   - Use the trunk release button.
3. Lift the trunk lid up.

To close:
Lower the trunk lid and press down until it locks.

⚠️ WARNING
The trunk swings upward. Make sure no objects or people are near the rear of the vehicle when opening the trunk.

⚠️ CAUTION
To prevent damage to the trunk lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the trunk before driving.

* NOTICE
In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

Always keep the trunk lid completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.
Power Trunk (if equipped)

(1) Power Trunk Main Control button
(2) Power Trunk Open button
(3) Power Trunk Close button
(4) Power Trunk Lock button

To open:
1. Make sure the shift lever is in P(Park).
2. Then do one of the following:
   - Press the Smart Key Trunk Unlock button for more than one second.
   - Press the Open button on the trunk. You need the Smart Key in your possession, when all doors are locked.
   - Press the Power Trunk Main Control button.
To close:
Do one of the following:
- Press the Power Trunk Main Control button until the Power Trunk is closed securely.
- Press the Close button on the trunk.
- Press the Lock button on the trunk while carrying the Smart Key and all the vehicle’s doors are closed. All doors will lock and arm the theft alarm system.

If you push a button or switch while the trunk is opening or closing, it could stop moving. Press any button to operate the Power Trunk again.

✽ NOTICE
The Power Trunk Lock button will not work if you press the button when:
- Any door is open.
- The Engine Start/Stop Button is not in the OFF position.
- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.

⚠️ WARNING
Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. Children or animals might operate the power trunk that could result in injury to themselves or others, or damage to the vehicle.

⚠️ WARNING
Always keep the trunk lid completely closed while the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.

⚠️ WARNING
Make sure there are no people or objects around the trunk before opening or closing the Power Trunk. Wait until the trunk is open fully and stopped before loading or unloading cargo from the vehicle.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not close or open the Power Trunk manually. This may cause damage to the Power Trunk. If it is necessary to close or open the Power Trunk manually when the battery is drained or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.
- Do not leave the Power Trunk open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.
- To prevent damage to the trunk lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the trunk before driving.

✽ NOTICE
In cold and wet climates, trunk lock and trunk mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
Power Trunk Non-Opening or Closing Conditions:

- The Power Trunk will not open or close automatically, when the vehicle is moving more than 1.8 mph (3 km/h).
- The Power Trunk can be operated when the engine is not running. However, the Power Trunk operation consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from draining, do not operate it excessively (e.g., more than approximately 10 times repeatedly.)
- Do not modify or repair any part of the Power Trunk by yourself. This must be done by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Before jacking up the vehicle to change a tire or repair the vehicle, open the Power Trunk. Do not operate the Power Trunk when the vehicle is raised or this could cause the Power Trunk to operate improperly.
- If there are obstacles such as snow on the Power Trunk, it may not open automatically. After removing the obstacle, try to open it again.

Automatic stop and Reverse

If, during power opening or closing, the trunk is blocked by an object or part of someone's body, the power trunk will detect the resistance and it will stop movement or move to the full open position to allow the object to be cleared.

However, if the resistance is weak such as from an object that is thin or soft, or the trunk is near the latched position, the automatic stop and reversal may not detect the resistance and the closing operation will continue. Also, if the Power Trunk is forced by a strong impact, the automatic stop and reversal may operate.

If the automatic stop and reverse feature operates more than twice during one opening or closing operation, the Power Trunk may stop at that position. If this occurs, close the trunk manually and operate the trunk automatically again.

WARNING
To prevent serious injury and damage take the following precautions when operating the power trunk:

- Keep all faces, hands, arms, body parts and other objects away from the path of the power trunk.
- Do not intentionally place any body parts or objects in the path of the power trunk to make sure the automatic stop and reversal operates.
- Do not allow children to play with the power trunk.
To Reset the Power Trunk

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, or if the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected, reset the Power Trunk as follows:
1. Move the shift lever to the P(Park) position.
2. Close the trunk manually.

If the Power Trunk doesn't work properly after performing the above procedure, have the system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Trunk Lid Control Button

Even though the trunk lid control button is OFF (not depressed), the trunk will still be propelled upward by mechanical force if the trunk is manually opened more than 10 degrees beyond the fully closed position. In addition, if the trunk is manually closed to the secondary latch position, the trunk will be electrically moved to the fully latched position.

When the trunk lid control button is ON (depressed), the power trunk can be controlled with the power trunk main control button, power trunk open, close button, and the smart key. When this trunk lid control button is OFF (not depressed), the power trunk can be controlled using the mechanical key of the smart key only.
Your vehicle is equipped with an Emergency Trunk Safety Release lever located inside the trunk. When someone is inadvertently locked in the trunk, the trunk can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the trunk open.

**WARNING**

- You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the Emergency Trunk Safety Release lever in this vehicle and how to open the trunk in case you are accidentally locked in the trunk.
- NEVER allow anyone to occupy the trunk of the vehicle at any time. If the trunk is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The trunk is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle’s crush zone.

(Continued)
Features of your vehicle

(continued)

- Your vehicle should be kept locked and the Smart Key should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in trunks.
- Use the release lever for emergencies only.
Features of your vehicle

WINDOWS

(1) Driver’s Door Power Window Switch
(2) Front Passenger’s Door Power Window Switch
(3) Rear Door (left) Power Window Switch and Curtain Switch (if equipped)
(4) Rear Door (right) Power Window Switch and Curtain Switch (if equipped)
(5) Window Opening and Closing
(6) Automatic Power Window up/down
(7) Power Window Lock Switch

*NOTICE*
In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
Power Windows

The Engine Start/Stop Button must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows.

Each door has a Power Window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock switch which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 30 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop Button is placed in the ACC or LOCK position. However, if the front doors are opened, the Power Windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

⚠️ WARNING
To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the windows while driving.

* NOTICE
While driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) in an open (or partially open) position, your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is a normal occurrence and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately one inch. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly reduce the size of the sunroof opening.

Window Opening and Closing

To open:
Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:
Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.
Auto Up/Down Window
Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or raises the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position while the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

To Reset the Power Windows
If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:
1. Press the Engine Start/Stop Button twice to the ON position.
2. Close the windows and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.
If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, have the system checked by a EQUUS dealer.

Automatic Reverse
If a window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 12 in (30 cm) to allow the object to be cleared.
If the window detects the resistance while the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 1 in (2.5 cm).
If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within five seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reversal feature, the automatic window reversal will not operate.

NOTICE
The automatic reverse feature for the driver’s window is only active when the “auto up” feature is used by fully pulling up the switch. The automatic reverse feature will not operate if the window is raised using the halfway position on the power window switch.

WARNING
Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.
Objects less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.
For each of the rear doors, you can fold or unfold the rear door window curtain by using the power window switch on each rear door. Both rear curtains can also be operated from the switches on the driver’s door.

To unfold:
1. Close the window by pulling up the switch.
2. To set up the curtain, pull up the switch once more.

To fold:
1. If you want to open the curtained window, push down the switch one time to store the curtain.
2. Push down the switch one more time to open the window.

⚠️ NOTICEx
If the upward or downward movement of the curtain is blocked by an object or part of the body, the curtain will detect the resistance and will stop movement and move downward or upward.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not apply excessive force while operating the window curtain. This could cause damage to the window curtain.

★ NOTICE
The rear door window curtain may not operate normally, when the temperature in the vehicle is lower than 5°F (-15°C).
To Reset the Rear Door Window Curtains
If the window curtain is not operating correctly, it must be reset as follows:
1. Press the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
2. Close the window curtain by pressing the power window switch to the first detent position and continue pulling up the switch for at least 10 seconds.

If the window curtain doesn't work properly after following the above procedure, have the system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Power Window Lock Button

The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers’ doors by pressing the power window lock switch. The indicator will be illuminated.

When the power window lock switch indicator is illuminated:
• The driver’s master control can operate all the power windows.
• The front passenger’s control can operate the front passenger’s power window.
• The rear passenger’s control cannot operate the rear passenger’s power window.

WARNING
Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver’s door power window lock switch in the LOCK position (indicator illuminating). Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.

CAUTION
• To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.
• Never try to operate the main switch on the driver’s door and the individual door window switch in opposing directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.
Features of your vehicle

HOOD

Opening the Hood

1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever located under the lower left corner of the dashboard to unlatch the hood. The hood should pop up slightly.
3. Raise the hood slightly, pull the secondary latch (1) inside of the hood center until it releases the hood and lift the hood (2). After it has been raised about halfway, it will raise completely by itself.

Closing the hood

1. Before closing the hood, check the following:
   - All filler caps in engine compartment must be correctly installed.
   - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the hood halfway and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the hood is secure.
**WARNING**

- Before closing the hood, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the hood opening.
- Always double check that the hood is firmly latched before driving away. If it is not latched, the hood could open while the vehicle is being driven, causing a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.
- Do not move the vehicle with the hood in the raised position, as vision is obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the hood could fall or be damaged.
Features of your vehicle

FUEL FILLER LID

Opening the Fuel Filler Lid

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Push the fuel filler lid opener button located on the driver's door. Then the fuel filler lid slowly open (1).
3. To remove the fuel tank cap (2), turn it counterclockwise. You may hear a hissing noise as the pressure inside the tank equalizes.
4. Place the cap on the fuel filler door.

Closing the Fuel Filler Lid

1. To install the fuel tank cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks once.
2. Close the Fuel Filler Lid until it is latched securely.

If the Malfunction Indicator Light ( ) comes ON, turn the engine off and check or retighten the fuel filler cap until it clicks once. If the Malfunction Indicator Light ( ) does not go off, have your vehicle checked by your EQUUS dealer.

WARNING
Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:
• Read and follow all warnings posted at the gas station.
• Before refueling, note the location of the Emergency Gasoline Shut-Off, if available, at the gas station.
• Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate the potential build-up of static electricity by touching a metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source, with your bare hand.
• Do not use cellular phones while refueling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from cellular phones can potentially ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.

(Continued)
• Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refueling. You can generate a build-up of static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other gasoline source, with your bare hand.

• When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refueling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.

(Continued)

Once refueling has begun, contact between your bare hand and the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

• Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store gasoline.

• When refueling, always move the shift lever to the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop Button to the OFF position. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.

• Do not use matches or a lighter and do not smoke or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle while at a gas station, especially during refueling.

• Do not over-fill or top-off your vehicle tank, which can cause gasoline spillage.

• If a fire breaks out during refueling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the gas station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.

• If pressurized fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.

• Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.
**NOTICE**

- Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel requirements" suggested in section I.
- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.

**CAUTION**

If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine EQUUS cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.
**SUNROOF**

**Sliding the Sunroof**

The Engine Start/Stop Button must be in the ON position before you can open or close the sunroof.

Pressing the sunroof control lever backward or forward momentarily to the second detent position completely opens or closes the sunroof even when the switch is released. To stop the sunroof at the desired position while the sunroof is in operation, press the sunroof control lever backward or forward and release the switch.

The sunroof can also be opened or closed by pressing the sunroof control lever backward or forward to the first detent position. But the sunroof opens or closes only when you press the sunroof control lever.

**Automatic Reverse**

If the sunroof senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop to allow the object to be cleared.

---

**WARNING**

Objects less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) in diameter caught between the sunroof glass and the sunroof sunshade may not be detected by the automatic reverse and the sunroof glass will not stop and reverse direction.
Tilting the Sunroof

To tilt the sunroof open:
Push the sunroof control lever upward to the second detent position. To stop the sunroof tilting at any point, operate the control lever.

To close the sunroof:
Pull the sunroof lever downward until the sunroof moves to the desired position.

⚠️ WARNING
- Make sure heads, other body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the sunroof to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.
- Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the sunroof while driving.

⚠️ NOTICE
The sunroof cannot slide when it is in the tilt position nor can it be tilted while in an open or slide position. After washing the vehicle or after a rain, be sure to wipe off the water on the sunroof before operating the sunroof.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the sunroof guide rail or between the sunroof and roof panel, which can make a noise.
- Do not try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, the motor could be damaged. In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly.
- To prevent damage to the sunroof and the motor, do not continue to press the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is in the fully open, closed or tilt position(s).
Resetting the Sunroof

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, or if the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected, reset the Sunroof as follows:

1. The Engine Start/Stop Button must be in the ON position.
2. Close the sunroof completely. Then release the control lever.
3. Pull and hold the control lever downward until the sunroof tilts and slightly moves up and down. Then, release the control lever.
4. Pull and hold the control lever downward until the sunroof is operated as follows;
   TILT DOWN → SLIDE OPEN → SLIDE CLOSE
   Then, release the control lever.

If the sunroof does not operate properly after resetting, have the system checked by a EQUUS dealer.

Sunshade

The sunshade will open automatically with the sunroof when the glass panel moves. If you want it closed, move the sunshade manually. Do not leave the sunshade closed while the sunroof is open.
Features of your vehicle

DRIVER POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM

This system is provided to store and recall the driver’s seat, outside rearview mirror and steering wheel positions. If the battery is disconnected, the position memory will be lost and the driving positions must be stored in the system again. If the memory system does not operate normally, have the driver position memory system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

WARNING
Never attempt to operate the driver position memory system while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Storing Position into Memory
1. Check that the shift lever is in P (Park) and the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver’s seat, outside rearview mirror and steering wheel to positions comfortable for the driver.
3. Press the SET button on the control panel. The system will beep once.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button. The system will beep twice when the positions of the driver’s seat, outside rearview mirror and steering wheel have been successfully stored.
Recalling Position into Memory

1. Check that the shift lever is in P (Park) and the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, then the driver's seat, outside rearview mirror and steering wheel will automatically adjust to the stored positions.

Pressing one of the control buttons for the driver's seat, the outside rearview mirror, or the steering wheel while the system is recalling the stored positions will cause the movement for that component to stop and move in the direction that the control button is pressed. Other components will continue to the recalled position.

Easy Access Function

When exiting the vehicle, the steering wheel will move away from the driver and the seat will move rearward when the engine is turned off.

When entering the vehicle, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and the seat will move forward when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed to the ACC position.

You can activate or deactivate the Easy Access Function from the User Setting Mode. Refer to the User Setting Mode in section 4

⚠️ WARNING

Use caution when recalling adjustment memory while sitting in the vehicle. Push the seat position control knob to the desired position immediately if the seat moves too far in any direction.
Features of your vehicle

STEERING WHEEL

Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering (EHPS)

This system uses an electromotor to assist you with steering the vehicle. If the engine is turned off or if the EHPS becomes inoperative, you may still steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering effort. Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, have the EHPS checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

NOTICE

If the EHPS motor pump malfunctions, the steering effort will greatly increase.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for extended periods outside in cold weather (below 14°F/-10°C), the power steering may require increased effort when the engine is first started. This is caused by increased fluid viscosity due to the cold weather and does not indicate a malfunction. When this happens, increase the engine RPM by depressing accelerator until the RPM reaches 1,500 rpm then release or let the engine idle for two or three minutes to warm up the fluid.

CAUTION

Do not hold the steering wheel to the extreme right or left for more than five (5) seconds with the engine running. This may cause damage to the EHPS motor pump.

Tilt Steering/Telescope Steering

Adjust the steering wheel angle (2) and position (3) with the knob (1) on the steering column. Move the steering wheel, so it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument panel warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position. Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.
Features of your vehicle

Heated Steering Wheel

When the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position, press the heated steering wheel button to warm the steering wheel. The indicator on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button again. The indicator on the button will be turned off. The heated steering wheel will turn off after approximately 30 minutes.

⚠️ WARNING
NEVER adjust the steering wheel while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

⚠️ WARNING
If the steering wheel becomes too warm, turn the system off. The heated steering wheel may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not install any cover and grip on the steering wheel. This could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.
Features of your vehicle

Horn

To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

⚠️ CAUTION

*Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.*
MIRRORS

Interior rearview mirrors
Before you start driving, adjust the rearview mirror to center on the view through the rear window.

⚠️ WARNING
Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, cargo area, or behind the rear headrests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.

⚠️ WARNING
To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.

⚠️ WARNING
NEVER adjust the mirror while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with HomeLink® system and compass (Type A)
Your vehicle may be equipped with a Gentex Automatic-Dimming Mirror with a Z-Nav™ Electronic Compass Display and an Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System. During nighttime driving, this feature will automatically detect and reduce rearview mirror glare while the compass indicates the direction the vehicle is pointed. The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver allows you to activate your garage door(s), electric gate, home lighting, etc.

(1) Telematics button
(2) Telematics button
(3) Telematics button
(4) Compass control button & Dimming ON/OFF button
(5) Status indicator LED
(6) Channel 1 button
(7) Channel 2 button
(8) Channel 3 button
(9) Compass display
(10) Rear light sensor
Automatic-Dimming Night Vision Safety™ (NVS®) Mirror

The NVS® Mirror in your vehicle is the most advanced way to reduce annoying glare in the rearview mirror during any driving situation. For more information regarding NVS® mirrors and other applications, please refer to the Gentex website: www.gentex.com

* NOTICE

The NVS® Mirror automatically reduces glare during driving conditions based upon light levels monitored in front of the vehicle and from the rear of the vehicle. These light sensors are visible through openings in the front and rear of the mirror case. Any object that obstructs either light sensor will degrade the automatic dimming control feature.

Automatic-dimming function

Your mirror will automatically dim upon detecting glare from the vehicles traveling behind you. The automatic-dimming function can be controlled by the Dimming ON/OFF Button:

1. Pressing and hold the button for 3 seconds turns the autodimming function OFF which is indicated by the green Status Indicator LED turning off.
2. Pressing and hold the button for 3 seconds again turns the autodimming function ON which is indicated by the green Status Indicator LED turning on.

The mirror defaults to the ON position each time the vehicle is started.

Z-Nav™ Compass Display

The NVS™ Mirror in your vehicle is also equipped with a Z-Nav™ Compass that shows the vehicle Compass heading in the Display Window using the 8 basic cardinal headings (N, NE, E, SE, etc.).

Compass function

The Compass can be turned ON and OFF and will remember the last state when the ignition is cycled. To turn the display feature ON/OFF:

1. Press and release the button within 1 second to turn the display feature OFF.
2. Press and release the button again within 1 second to turn the display back ON.

Additional options can be set with press and hold sequences of the button and are detailed below.

There is a difference between magnetic north and true north. The compass in the mirror can compensate for this difference when it knows the Magnetic Zone in which it is operating. This is set either by the dealer or by the user. The operating Zone Numbers for North America are shown in the figure on the following section.
Features of your vehicle

To adjust the Zone setting:
1. Determine the desired Zone Number based upon your current location on the Zone Map.
2. Press and hold the button for 6 seconds, the current Zone Number will appear on the display.
3. Pressing and holding the button again will cause the numbers to increment (Note: they will repeat ...13, 14, 15, 1, 2, ...). Releasing the button when the desired Zone Number appears on the display will set the new Zone.
4. Within about 5 seconds the compass will start displaying a compass heading again.
There are some conditions that can cause changes to the vehicle magnets, such as installing a ski rack or a CB antenna. Body repair work on the vehicle can also cause changes to the vehicle’s magnetic field. In these situations, the compass will need to be re-calibrated to quickly correct for these changes. To re-calibrate the compass:

1. Press and hold the button for more than 9 seconds. When the compass memory is cleared a "C" will appear in the display.
2. To calibrate the compass, drive the vehicle in 2 complete circles at less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

**Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System**

The HomeLink® Wireless Control System provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held radio-frequency (RF) transmitters with a single built-in device. This innovative feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most current transmitters to operate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems, even home lighting. Both standard and rolling code-equipped transmitters can be programmed by following the outlined procedures. Additional HomeLink® information can be found at: www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

**WARNING**

Before programming HomeLink® to a garage door opener or gate operator, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the device to prevent potential harm or damage. Do not use HomeLink® with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse features required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door that cannot detect an object - signaling the door to stop and reverse - does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.
Retain the original transmitter of the RF device you are programming for use in other vehicles as well as for future HomeLink® programming. It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons be erased for security purposes.

**Programming HomeLink®**

*NOTICE*

- When programming a garage door opener, it is advised to park the vehicle outside of the garage.
- It is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.
- Some vehicles may require the ignition switch to be turned to the second (or "accessories") position for programming and/or operation of HomeLink.
- In the event that there are still programming difficulties or questions after following the programming steps listed below, contact HomeLink® at: www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

To train most devices, follow these instructions:

1. For first-time programming, press and hold the two outside buttons ( ), HomeLink® Channel 1 and Channel 3, until the indicator light begins to flash (after 10 seconds). Release both buttons. Do not hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.
2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1-3 inches (2-8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program while keeping the indicator light in view.

3. Simultaneously press and hold both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

4. Firmly press, hold for 5 seconds and release the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.
   - If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
   - If the indicator light blinks rapidly for 2 seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with "Programming" steps 5-7 to complete the programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

5. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the "learn" or "smart" button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.

*NOTICE*
Some devices may require you to replace this Programming step 3 with procedures noted in the "Gate Operator/Canadian Programming" section. If the HomeLink® indicator light does not change to a rapidly blinking light after performing these steps, contact HomeLink® at www.homelink.com.
6. Firmly press and release the “learn” or “smart” button. (The name and color of the button vary by manufacturer). There are 30 seconds to initiate step 7.

7. Return to the vehicle and firmly press, hold for 2 seconds and release the programmed HomeLink® button. Repeat the "press/hold/release" sequence a second time, and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming process.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device.

**Gate operator & Canadian programming**
During programming, your handheld transmitter may automatically stop transmitting. Continue to press the Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System button (note steps 2 through 3 in the Programming portion of this document) while you press and re-press (“cycle”) your handheld transmitter every two seconds until the frequency signal has been learned. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after several seconds upon successful training.

**Operating HomeLink®**
To operate, simply press and release the programmed HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained device (i.e. garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

**Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button**
To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. DO NOT release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, proceed with "Programming" step 2.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.
Features of your vehicle

Erasing HomeLink® buttons
Individual buttons cannot be erased. However, to erase all three programmed buttons:
1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash after 10 seconds.
2. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 20 seconds.

The Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System is now in the training (learn) mode and can be programmed at any time following the appropriate steps in the Programming sections above.

FCC ID: NZLTLMHL4
IC: 4112A-TLMHL4

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠️ CAUTION
The transceiver has been tested and complies with FCC and Industry Canada rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the device.

NVS® is a registered trademark and Z-Nav™ is a trademark of the Gentex Corporation, Zeeland, Michigan. HomeLink® is a registered trademark owned by Johnson Controls, Incorporated, Milwaukee, Wisconsin.
Electric chromic mirror (ECM) with HomeLink® system and compass (Type B)
Your vehicle may be equipped with a Gentex Automatic-Dimming Mirror with a Z-Nav™ Electronic Compass Display and an Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System. During nighttime driving, this feature will automatically detect and reduce rearview mirror glare while the compass indicates the direction the vehicle is pointed. The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver allows you to activate your garage door(s), electric gate, home lighting, etc.

(1) Channel 1 button
(2) Channel 2 button
(3) Status indicator LED
(4) Channel 3 button
(5) Rear light sensor
(6) Dimming ON/OFF button
(7) Compass control button
(8) Compass display

Automatic-Dimming Night Vision Safety™ (NVS®) Mirror
The NVS® Mirror in your vehicle is the most advanced way to reduce annoying glare in the rearview mirror during any driving situation. For more information regarding NVS® mirrors and other applications, please refer to the Gentex website: www.gentex.com

CAUTION
The NVS® Mirror automatically reduces glare during driving conditions based upon light levels monitored in front of the vehicle and from the rear of the vehicle. These light sensors are visible through openings in the front and rear of the mirror case. Any object that obstructs either light sensor will degrade the automatic dimming control feature.
Features of your vehicle

Automatic-dimming function
Your mirror will automatically dim upon detecting glare from the vehicles traveling behind you. The auto-dimming function can be controlled by the Dimming ON/OFF Button:

1. Pressing the \( \odot \) button turns the auto-dimming function OFF which is indicated by the green Status Indicator LED turning off.
2. Pressing the \( \odot \) button again turns the auto-dimming function ON which is indicated by the green Status Indicator LED turning on.

\* NOTICE
The mirror defaults to the ON position each time the vehicle is started.

Z-Nav™ Compass Display
The NVS™ Mirror in your vehicle is also equipped with a Z-Nav™ Compass that shows the vehicle Compass heading in the Display Window using the 8 basic cardinal headings (N, NE, E, SE, etc.).

Compass function
The Compass can be turned ON and OFF and will remember the last state when the ignition is cycled. To turn the display feature ON/OFF:

1. Press and release the \( \odot \) button to turn the display feature OFF.
2. Press and release the \( \odot \) button again to turn the display back ON.

Additional options can be set with press and hold sequences of the \( \odot \) button and are detailed below.

There is a difference between magnetic north and true north. The compass in the mirror can compensate for this difference when it knows the Magnetic Zone in which it is operating. This is set either by the dealer or by the user. The operating Zone Numbers for North America are shown in the figure on the following section.
To adjust the Zone setting:
1. Determine the desired Zone Number based upon your current location on the Zone Map.
2. Press and hold the button for more than 3 but less than 6 seconds, the current Zone Number will appear on the display.
3. Pressing and holding the button again will cause the numbers to increment (Note: they will repeat ...13, 14, 15, 1, 2, ...). Releasing the button when the desired Zone Number appears on the display will set the new Zone.
4. Within about 5 seconds the compass will start displaying a compass heading again.
There are some conditions that can cause changes to the vehicle magnets, such as installing a ski rack or a CB antenna. Body repair work on the vehicle can also cause changes to the vehicle's magnetic field. In these situations, the compass will need to be re-calibrated to quickly correct for these changes. To re-calibrate the compass:

1. Press and hold the button for more than 6 seconds. When the compass memory is cleared a "C" will appear in the display.
2. To calibrate the compass, drive the vehicle in 2 complete circles at less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System
The HomeLink® Wireless Control System provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held radio-frequency (RF) transmitters with a single built-in device. This innovative feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most current transmitters to operate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems, even home lighting. Both standard and rolling code-equipped transmitters can be programmed by following the outlined procedures. Additional HomeLink® information can be found at: www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

⚠️ CAUTION
Before programming HomeLink® to a garage door opener or gate operator, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the device to prevent potential harm or damage. Do not use HomeLink® with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse features required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door that cannot detect an object - signaling the door to stop and reverse - does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. Using a garage door opener without these features increases the risk of serious injury or death.
Retain the original transmitter of the RF device you are programming for use in other vehicles as well as for future HomeLink® programming. It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons be erased for security purposes.

**Programming HomeLink®

*NOTICE*

- When programming a garage door opener, it is advised to park the vehicle outside of the garage.
- It is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.
- Some vehicles may require the ignition switch to be turned to the second (or "accessories") position for programming and/or operation of HomeLink®.
- In the event that there are still programming difficulties or questions after following the programming steps listed below, contact HomeLink® at: www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515.

**Standard programming**

To train most devices, follow these instructions:

1. For first-time programming, press and hold the two outside buttons, HomeLink® Channel 1 and Channel 3 Buttons, until the indicator light begins to flash (after 20 seconds). Release both buttons. Do not hold the buttons for longer than 30 seconds.

2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1-3 inches (2-8 cm) away from the HomeLink® buttons while keeping the indicator light in view.

3. Simultaneously press and hold both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter button. DO NOT release the buttons until step 4 has been completed.
4. While continuing to hold the buttons the red Indicator Status LED will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® successfully trains to the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons.

5. Press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the red Status Indicator LED. If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.

6. To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, follow steps 2 through 5.

**Rolling code programming**
Rolling code devices which are "code-protected" and manufactured after 1996 may be determined by the following:
- Reference the device owner's manual for verification.
- The handheld transmitter appears to program the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver but does not activate the device.
- Press and hold the trained HomeLink® button. The device has the rolling code feature if the indicator light flashes rapidly and then turns solid after 2 seconds.

To train rolling code devices, follow these instructions:
1. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the "learn" or "smart" button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit. Exact location and color of the button may vary by garage door opener brand. If there is difficulty locating the training button, reference the device owner's manual or please visit our Web site at www.homelink.com.
2. Firmly press and release the "learn" or "smart" button (which activates the "training light").

*NOTICE*
There are 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3.
3. Return to the vehicle and firmly press, hold for two seconds and then release the desired HomeLink® button. Repeat the "press/hold/release" sequence a second time to complete the programming. (Some devices may require you to repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.)

4. Press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the red Status Indicator LED. If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate.

5. To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, follow either steps 1 through 4 above for other Rolling Code devices or steps 2 through 5 in Standard Programming for standard devices.

**Gate operator & Canadian programming**

During programming, your handheld transmitter may automatically stop transmitting. Continue to press the Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System button (note steps 2 through 4 in the Standard Programming portion of this document) while you press and re-press ("cycle") your handheld transmitter every two seconds until the frequency signal has been learned. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after several seconds upon successful training.

**Operating HomeLink®**

To operate, simply press and release the programmed HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained device (i.e. garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

**Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button**

To program a new device to a previously trained HomeLink® button, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. Do NOT release until step 4 has been completed.

2. When the indicator light begins to flash slowly (after 20 seconds), position the handheld transmitter 1 to 3 inches away from the HomeLink® surface.

3. Press and hold the handheld transmitter button. The HomeLink® indicator light will flash, first slowly and then rapidly.

4. When the indicator light begins to flash rapidly, release both buttons.

5. Press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the red Status Indicator LED. If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your new device should activate.
Erasing HomeLink® buttons
Individual buttons cannot be erased. However, to erase all three programmed buttons:
1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds.
2. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer than 30 seconds.

The Integrated HomeLink® Wireless Control System is now in the training (learn) mode and can be programmed at any time following the appropriate steps in the Programming sections above.

FCC ID: NZLZTVHL3
IC: 4112A-ZTVHL3

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING
The transceiver has been tested and complies with FCC and Industry Canada rules. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the device.

NVS® is a registered trademark and Z-Nav™ is a trademark of the Gentex Corporation, Zeeland, Michigan. HomeLink® is a registered trademark owned by Johnson Controls, Incorporated, Milwaukee, Wisconsin.
Outside rearview mirror

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside mirrors.

⚠️ WARNING
- The right outside rearview mirror is convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.
- Use your interior rearview mirror or turn your head and look to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.

⚠️ WARNING
Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors while driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass. If ice should restrict movement of the mirror, do not force the mirror for adjustment. To remove ice, use a deicer spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with warm water.

⚠️ CAUTION
If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) to release the frozen mechanism or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.
Adjusting the rearview mirrors:
Press either the L (driver’s side) or R (passenger’s side) button (1) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
Use the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
After adjustment, press the L or R button (1) again to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

⚠️ CAUTION
• The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate while the switch is depressed. Do not depress the switch longer than necessary; the motor may be damaged.
• Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirror by hand or the motor may be damaged.

Folding the Outside Rearview Mirrors

To fold:
Press the button located on the driver’s side door panel.
The Engine Start/Stop Button must be in the ON position or within approximately 30 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed to the ACC position or the OFF position.
Also, the outside rearview mirrors can be folded when you lock the doors with the Smart Key.
Features of your vehicle

To unfold:
Press the button located on the driver’s side door panel.
The Engine Start/Stop Button must be in the ON position or within approximately 30 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed to the ACC position or the OFF position.
Also, the outside rearview mirrors can be unfolded when you approach the vehicle with the Smart Key in your possession or unlock the doors with the Smart Key.
If you have locked the doors and left the vehicle after folding the outside mirror, the automatic unfolding function by the Smart Key does not work.

Electric chromic mirror (ECM) (if equipped)
The electric chromic mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlights of the car behind you in nighttime or low light driving conditions. The sensor mounted in the mirror senses the light level around the vehicle, and automatically controls the headlight glare from vehicles behind you.
When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror.
Whenever the shift lever is shifted into R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle. If the ECM of inside rearview mirror operates, it will be working.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not fold the electric type of outside rearview mirror by hand. This could cause failure of the motor.

⚠️ CAUTION
When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.
Reverse Parking Aid Function

When you move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) will rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse. The position of the outside rearview mirror switch (1) determines whether or not the mirrors will move:

**Left/Right**: When either the L or R switch is selected, both outside rearview mirrors will move.

**Neutral**: When neither switch is selected, the outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The shift lever is moved to any position except R (Reverse).
- The remote control outside rearview mirror switch is not selected.
Features of your vehicle

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Type A

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge
4. Fuel Gauge
5. Odometer
6. LCD Display (Including trip computer)

* The actual instrument cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more details, refer to the "Gauges" in this chapter.
Features of your vehicle

1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge
4. Fuel Gauge
5. Odometer
6. LCD Display (Including trip computer)

- The instrument cluster theme is automatically changed in accordance with the drive mode (NORMAL, SPORT, SNOW).
- For more details of the drive mode, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" in chapter 5.
- On the "User Settings Mode" of the LCD display, you can activate or deactivate the automatic change of the instrument cluster theme.
- For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

* The actual instrument cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration. For more details, refer to the "Gauges" in this chapter.

OVINDI3902
Instrument Cluster Control
Adjusting Instrument Cluster Illumination

The brightness of the instrument panel illumination can be adjusted by pressing the illumination control buttons (“+” or “-”) when the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON or the tail lights are turned on.

- The brightness has 20 levels: 1 (MIN) ~ 20 (MAX)
- If you hold the illumination control button (“+” or “-”), the brightness will be changed continuously.
- If the brightness reaches to the maximum or minimum level, an alarm will sound.
Features of your vehicle

**LCD Display Control**
The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons on the steering wheel.

1. `<` button: Changing LCD modes (right to left), or returning to previous position
2. `>` button: Changing LCD modes (left to right)
3. ``, `.` button: Changing items (upper or lower)
4. OK button: selecting or resetting

* For the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

1. Haptic switch: changing LCD modes or items
2. OK button: selecting or resetting
3. RETURN button: returning to previous position

You can adjust the rotating effort of the haptic switch on the "User Settings Mode" of the LCD Display.

* For more details, refer to "LCD Display" to in this chapter.
Gauges

**Speedometer**

- **Type A**
- **Type B**

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in miles per hour (mph) and/or kilometers per hour (km/h).

*NOTICE*

On the "User Settings Mode" of the LCD display, you can set the font size of the speedometer (Normal or Large) (Type B).

**Tachometer**

- **Type A**
- **Type B**

The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).
Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

⚠️ CAUTION

*Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.*

**Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge**

- **Type A**

[Image: Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge Type A]

- **Type B**

[Image: Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge Type B]

This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the engine is running.

⚠️ CAUTION

*If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the “H” position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.*

*Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to “If the Engine Overheats” in chapter 6.*

⚠️ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could severely burn. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.
**Fuel Gauge**

This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

**NOTICE**
- The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 8.
- The fuel gauge is supplemented by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.
- On inclines or curves, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

**WARNING - Fuel Gauge**
Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger. You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the “E (Empty)” level.

**CAUTION**
Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.
**Features of your vehicle**

**Odometer**

The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

- Odometer range: 0 ~ 999999 kilometers or miles.

**Outside Temperature Gauge**

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°F (1°C).

- Temperature range: -40°F ~ 140°F (-40°C ~ 60°C)

The outside temperature on the display may not change immediately like a general thermometer to prevent the driver from being inattentive.

The temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C) can be changed by pressing the OFF button and AUTO button on the front climate control panel for 3 seconds simultaneously.

**Automatic Transmission Shift Indicator**

This indicator displays which automatic transmission shift lever is selected.

- Park: P
- Reverse: R
- Neutral: N
- Drive: D
- Sports Mode: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
# LCD DISPLAY

## LCD Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modes</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trip Computer</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>This mode displays driving information like the trip meter, fuel economy, and so on. ✫ For more details, refer to &quot;Trip Computer&quot; in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCC/LDWS (if equipped)</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>This mode displays the state of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS). ✫ For more details, refer to “Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC)” and “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)” in chapter 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/V (if equipped)</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>This mode displays the state of the A/V system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn By Turn (TBT) (if equipped)</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>This mode displays the state of the navigation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information</td>
<td>![Symbol] or ![Symbol]</td>
<td>This mode informs of service interval (mileage or days) and warning messages related to the advanced smart cruise control system, pre-safe seat belt, and so on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Settings</td>
<td>![Symbol]</td>
<td>On this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, and so on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

✯ For controlling the LCD modes, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.
**Features of your vehicle**

**Trip Computer Mode**

This mode displays driving information like the tripmeter, fuel economy, and so on.

※ For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.

**ASCC/LDWS Mode (if equipped)**

This mode displays the state of the Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) and Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).

※ For more details, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC)" and "Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)" in chapter 5.

**A/V Mode**

This mode displays the state of the A/V system.
**Features of your vehicle**

**Turn By Turn (TBT) Mode (if equipped)**

This mode displays the state of the navigation.

**Information Mode**

*Service Interval*

This mode shows the service interval (mileage and days).

※ For the setting of the service interval, refer to "User Settings Mode" of the LCD display.

**Service in**

It calculates and displays when you need a scheduled maintenance service (mileage or days).

If the remaining mileage or time reaches 900 miles (1,500 km) or 30 days, "Service in" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
Features of your vehicle

Service required

If you do not have your vehicle serviced according to the already inputted service interval, "Service required" message is displayed for several seconds each time you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.

To reset the service interval to the mileage and days you inputted before:
- Press the OK button for more than 1 second.

Service in OFF

If the service interval is not set, "Service in OFF" message is displayed on the LCD display.

Warning Message

If one of followings occurs, warning messages will be displayed on the information mode for about 10 seconds.
- Malfunction of the pre-safe seat belt, electronic control suspension, or advanced smart cruise control system
- Low washer fluid
- Check fuel cap

∗ NOTICE

If any of the following conditions occurs, the mileage and days may be incorrect.
- The battery cable is disconnected.
- The fuse switch is turned off.
- The battery is discharged.
Features of your vehicle

User Settings Mode

*HUD Settings (if equipped)*

**Display Height**
Adjust the height of the HUD image on the windshield glass (Level 0 to 20).

**Illumination**
Adjust the intensity of the HUD illumination (Level 0 to 20).

**Font Color**
Choose the font color of the HUD (White, Orange, Green).
Features of your vehicle

Font Size

Choose the font size of the HUD (Large, Medium, Small).

Contents Setting (if equipped)

Activate or deactivate each contents of the HUD (TBT, SCC, LDWS, BSD).

NOTICE

If you select the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information as HUD contents, the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information will not be displayed on the LCD.

* TBT : Turn By Turn
  SCC : (Advanced) Smart Cruise Control
  LDWS : Lane Departure Warning System
  BSD : Blind Spot Detection
Vehicle Settings
On this mode, you can change setting of the instrument cluster, doors, lamps, and so on.

Cluster Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Welcome Sound                 | • On: The welcome sound will operate when the instrument cluster is turned on.  
• Off: The welcome sound function will be deactivated.                                     |
| AVSM (if equipped)            | • On: The AVSM system will be activated.  
• Off: The AVSM system will be deactivated.  
✦ For more details, refer to “Advanced Vehicle Safety Management (AVSM) System” in chapter 5.  
✦ AVSM: Advanced Vehicle Safety Management                                                                 |
| LDWS Haptic (if equipped)     | • On: The haptic function of the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) will be activated.  
• Off: The haptic function of the Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) will be deactivated.  
✦ For more details, refer to “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)” in chapter 5.                                                                 |
| Traffic Information (if equipped) | • On: The LCD display will show traffic information.  
• Off: The LCD display will not show traffic information.                                                                                     |
| Speedometer Size (if equipped) | • Choose the size of the number in the speedometer (Large or Normal).                                                                                       |
| Driving Mode Theme (if equipped) | • On: The instrument cluster theme is automatically changed in accordance with the drive mode (NORMAL, SPORT, SNOW).  
• Off: The automatic change function of the instrument cluster theme will be deactivated                                                                 |
### Features of your vehicle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECO Driving</td>
<td>• On: The ECO driving mode will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Off: The ECO driving mode will be deactivated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVG Fuel Eco Reset</td>
<td>• Auto Reset: The average fuel economy will reset automatically when refueling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Manual Reset: The average fuel economy will not reset automatically when refueling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>★ For more details, refer to “Trip Computer” in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Door

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Auto Door Lock**    | • Off: The auto door lock operation will be deactivated.  
                          • Speed: All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 9.3mph (15km/h).  
                          • Shift Lever: All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position. |
| **Auto Door Unlock**  | • Off: The auto door unlock operation will be canceled.  
                          • Power Off: All doors will be automatically unlocked when the Engine Star/Stop Button is set to the OFF position.  
                          • Shift Lever: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the automatic transmission shift lever is shifted to the P (Park) position.  
                          • Driver Door Unlock: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the driver's door is unlocked. |
# Features of your vehicle

## Lamp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Head Lamp Delay</td>
<td>• On: The head lamp delay function will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Off: The headlamp delay function will be deactivated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✫ For more details, refer to “Lighting” in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welcome Light</td>
<td>• On: The welcome light function will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Off: The welcome light function will be deactivated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✫ For more details, refer to “Welcome System” in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Touch Turn Lamp</td>
<td>• Off: The one touch turn lamp function will be deactivated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 3, 5, 7 Flashing: The lane change signals will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lever is moved slightly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>✫ For more details, refer to “Lighting” in this chapter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Features of your vehicle

#### Driver Convenience

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Items</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seat Easy Access</strong></td>
<td>- Off: The seat easy access function will be deactivated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Normal/Enhanced:&lt;br&gt;  - When you turn off the engine, the driver's seat will automatically move rearward by 2 inch (Normal) or 3 inch (Enhanced) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably.&lt;br&gt;  - If you change the Engine Start/Stop Button from OFF position to the ACC, ON, or START position, the driver's seat will return to the original position.&lt;br&gt;  ✫ For more details, refer to “Driver Position Memory System” in chapter 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Steering Easy Access</strong></td>
<td>- On: The steering wheel will automatically move forward or rearward for the driver to enter or exit the vehicle comfortably.&lt;br&gt;  - Off: The steering easy access function will be deactivated.&lt;br&gt;  ✫ For more details, refer to “Driver Position Memory System” in chapter 4.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Haptic Steering System Switch (if equipped)

Adjust the rotating effort of the haptic switch on the steering wheel for LCD display control (Strong, Normal, Mild).<br>  ✫ For the haptic switch, refer to "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.
Features of your vehicle

Service Interval

Quick Guide (if equipped)

On this mode, you can activate the service interval function with mileage (km or mi.) and period (months).

- Off: The service interval function will be deactivated.
- On: You can set the service interval (mileage and months).

This mode provides quick guides for the Head Up Display (HUD), Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System, Smart Cruise Control (SCC) System, Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS), and so on.

For the details of each system, refer to the owner's manual.
**Warning Messages**

*Shift to "P" or "N" to start engine*

- This warning message illuminates if you try to start the engine with the shift lever not in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

*NOTICE*

You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the shift lever in the P (Park) position.

*Shift to "P" position*

- This warning message illuminates if you try to turn off the engine without the shift lever in P (Park) position.
- At this time, the Engine Start/Stop Button turns to the ACC position (If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button once more, it will turn to the ON position).

*Press start button again*

- This warning message illuminates if you can not operate the Engine Start/Stop Button when there is a problem with the Engine Start/Stop Button system.
- It means that you could start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button once more.
- If the warning illuminates each time you press the Engine Start/Stop Button, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Features of your vehicle

**Press brake pedal to start engine**
- This warning message illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.
- It means that you should depress the brake pedal to start the engine.

**Press start button with smart key**
- This warning message illuminates if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button while the warning message “Key not detected” is illuminating.
- At this time, the immobilizer indicator light blinks.

**Low Key Battery**
- This warning message illuminates if the battery of the smart key is discharged when the Engine Start/Stop Button changes to the OFF position.
**Key not detected**

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.

**Key not in vehicle**

- This warning message illuminates if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
- It means that you should always have the smart key with you.

**Press start button while turn steering**

- This warning message illuminates if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop Button is pressed.
- It means that you should press the Engine Start/Stop Button while turning the steering wheel right and left.
Features of your vehicle

Align steering wheel

- This warning message illuminates if you start the engine when the steering wheel is turned to more than 90 degrees to the left or right.
- It means that you should turn the steering wheel and make the angle of the steering wheel be less than 30 degrees.

Door / Hood / Trunk Open

- It means that any door, hood, or trunk is open.

Sunroof Open

- This warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.
**Window Open**

This warning message illuminates if you turn off the engine when any window is open.

**Check fuse “BRAKE SWITCH”**

- This warning message illuminates if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.
- It means that you should replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

**Turn on “FUSE SWITCH”**

- This warning message illuminates if the fuse switch under the steering wheel is OFF.
- It means that you should turn the fuse switch on.

※ For more details, refer to “Fuses” in chapter 7.
Features of your vehicle

**Low Tire Pressure**

- This warning message illuminates if the tire pressure is low with the Engine/Start Button in ON position.

  ※ For more details, refer to "Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.

**Check Fuel Cap**

- This warning message illuminates if the fuel filler cap is opened or is not tightened securely. Tighten the fuel filler cap securely.

**Check Power System**

- This warning message illuminates if the battery voltage is abnormally low, or the battery has poor performance. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Features of your vehicle

**Low Washer Fluid**
- This warning message illuminates on the service reminder mode if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.
- It means that you should refill the washer fluid.

**Check BSD System (if equipped)**
- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system. And the light on the BSD switch will turn off and the BSD system will be automatically deactivated. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Service Engine Immediately**
- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the engine. And the vehicle speed is limited. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

※ For more details, refer to "Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System" in chapter 5.
Features of your vehicle

Check PSB

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Pre-safe Seat Belt (PSB) system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

❈ For more details, refer to "Seat Belt" in chapter 3.

Check ECS

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS) system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

❈ For more details, refer to "Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS)" in chapter 5.

❈ NOTICE - ECS Warning Message

When there is a malfunction with the Electronic Stability Control (ESC), the Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS) warning message may illuminate as well as the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light.

❈ CAUTION - ECS Warning Message

- If the Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS) Warning Message illuminates when there is no air in the suspension, the vehicle height will be very low. In this case, do not drive the vehicle to protect it from the projections on the surface of the ground. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

- When towing the vehicle, you should follow the instruction in "Electronic Controlled Suspension (ECS)" of chapter 5.
Features of your vehicle

**Check SCC System**

- This warning message illuminates if there is a malfunction with the advanced smart cruise control system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

* For more details, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control System" in chapter 5.

**Check SCC Radar**

- This warning message illuminates if the radar of the advanced smart cruise control system or its cover is stained. Remove the stains with a soft cloth.

* For more details, refer to "Advanced Smart Cruise Control System" in chapter 5.
Features of your vehicle

TRIP COMPUTER

Overview

Description

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

NOTICE

Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.

Trip Modes

- Type A: To change the trip mode, press the \( \text{ } \) or \( \text{ } \) button.
- Type B: To change the trip mode, rotate the haptic switch.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display control" in this chapter.
Features of your vehicle

Trip A/B

✽ NOTICE
If you reset one of the tripmeter, elapsed time, and average vehicle speed, they will be reset all together.

✽ For more details of OK button, refer to the "LCD Display Control" in this chapter.

Tripmeter (1)
- The tripmeter is the total driving distance since the last tripmeter reset.
  - Distance range: 0.0 ~ 9999.9 mi. or km
- To reset the tripmeter, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the tripmeter is displayed.

Elapsed Time (2)
- The elapsed time is the total driving time since the last elapsed time reset.
  - Time range (hh:mm): 00:00 ~ 99:59
- To reset the elapsed time, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

Average Vehicle Speed (3)
- The average vehicle speed is calculated by the total driving distance and driving time since the last average vehicle speed reset.
  - Speed range: 0 ~ 999 MPH or km/h
- To reset the average vehicle speed, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

✽ NOTICE
• The average vehicle speed is not displayed if the driving distance has been less than 0.19 miles (300 meters) since the Engine Start/Stop Button was turned to ON.
• Even if the vehicle is not in motion, the average vehicle speed keeps going while the engine is running.
Features of your vehicle

**Fuel Economy**

**Distance To Empty (1)**
- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
  - Distance range: 30 ~ 999 mi. or 50 ~ 999 km
- If the estimated distance is below 30 mi. (50 km), the trip computer will display “---” as distance to empty.

*NOTICE*
- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.
- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 1.6 gallons (6 liters) of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- The fuel economy and distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

**Instant Fuel Economy (2)**
- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 6.2 MPH (10 km/h).
  - Fuel economy range: 0 ~ 50 MPG or 0 ~ 20 L/100km

**Average Fuel Economy (3)**
- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
  - Fuel economy range: 0.0 ~ 99.9 MPG or L/100km
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.
Manual reset
To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

* For more details of OK button, refer to the "LCD Display Control" in this chapter

Automatic reset
To make the average fuel economy be reset automatically whenever refueling, select the "Auto Reset" mode in User Setting menu of the LCD display (Refer to "LCD Display").
Under "Auto Reset" mode, the average fuel economy will be cleared to zero (---) when the vehicle speed exceeds 1 km/h after refueling more than 1.6 gallons (6 liters).

* NOTICE
The average fuel economy is not displayed for more accurate calculation if the vehicle does not drive more than 0.19 miles (300 meters) since the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to ON.
Features of your vehicle

WARNING AND INDICATOR LIGHTS

Warning lights

✽ NOTICE - Warning lights
Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Supplemental Restraint System Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:
• Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
• When there is a malfunction with the SRS.
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Seat Belt Warning Light

This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

✽ For more details, refer to the “Seat Belts” in chapter 3.
Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds.
  - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
  - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in reservoir is low.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:
1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (For more details, refer to "Brake Fluid" in chapter 7). Then check all brake components for fluid leaks. If any leak on the brake system is still found, the warning light remains on, or the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle.
In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Dual-diagonal braking system
Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail while you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
Features of your vehicle

**WARNING - Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light**

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

---

**Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light**

This warning light illuminates:

- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

---

**Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

These two warning lights illuminate at the same time while driving:

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not work normally.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
**WARNING - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking. In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**NOTICE - Electronic Brake force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light**

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or trip-meter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)**

This warning light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
- It remains on until the engine is started.
- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.
In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Features of your vehicle

⚠️ CAUTION - Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control systems which could effect drivability and/or fuel economy.

⚠️ CAUTION - Gasoline Engine

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Charging System Warning Light

If this warning light comes on while the engine is running, the battery is not being charged. Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use electrically operated controls, such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will quickly discharge the battery.

If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the engine coolant temperature is above 248°F (120°C). This means that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

If your vehicle is overheated, refer to “Overheating” in chapter 6.

⚠️ CAUTION - Engine Overheating

Do not continue driving with the engine overheated. Otherwise engine may be damaged.
**Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light**

This warning light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It remains on until the engine is started.
- When the engine oil pressure is low.

If the engine oil pressure is low:
1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (For more details, refer to “Engine Oil” in section 7). If the level is low, add oil as required.

If the warning light remains on after adding oil and restarting the engine or if oil is not available, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**CAUTION - Engine Oil Pressure Warning light**

*To prevent severe engine damage, after the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light is illuminated and as soon as it is safe to do so, turn the engine off and check the oil level.*

*If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level and start the engine again. If the light stays on with the engine running, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.*

**Low Fuel Level Warning Light**

This warning light illuminates:
When the fuel tank is nearly empty.

If the fuel tank is nearly empty:
Add fuel as soon as possible.

**CAUTION - Low Fuel Level**

*Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below “E” can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).*
Features of your vehicle

**Low Tire Pressure Warning Light**

This warning light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated (The location of the underinflated tires are displayed on the LCD display).

★ For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 6.

This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeats blinking and off at the intervals of approximately 3 seconds:
- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

★ For more details, refer to “Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)” in chapter 6.

**Door Ajar Warning Light**

This warning light illuminates:
When a door is not closed securely.

**Trunk Open Warning Light**

This warning light illuminates:
When the trunk lid is not closed securely.

⚠️ **WARNING - Safe Stopping**

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) Warning Light

This warning light blinks:
- Once you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the AFLS.

If there is a malfunction with the AFLS:
1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

✽ NOTICE - Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicates that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

Master Warning Light

This indicator light illuminates
- When there is a malfunction on the pre-safe seat belt, check fuel cap, low washer, electronic control suspension, or advanced smart cruise control. To identify the details of the warning, look at the LCD display.
Features of your vehicle

**Indicator Lights**

*Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light*

This indicator light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

This indicator light blinks:
While the ESC is operating.

※ For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 5.

*Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light*

This indicator light illuminates:
- Once you set the ignition switch or Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

※ For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 5.

*Immobilizer Indicator Light*

This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:
- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle properly while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ACC or ON.
  - At this time, you can start the engine.
  - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:
- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine.
This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

- When the vehicle can not detect the smart key which is in the vehicle while the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON.
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

- When the battery of the smart key is weak.
  - At this time, you can not start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. (For more details, refer to “Starting the Engine” in section 5).
- When there is a malfunction with the immobilizer system.
  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Turn Signal Indicator Light**

This indicator light blinks:

- When you turn the turn signal light on.

If any of the following occurs, there may a malfunction with the turn signal system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

- The indicator light does not blink but illuminates.
- The indicator light blinks more rapidly.
- The indicator light does not illuminate at all.

**Low Beam Indicator Light (if equipped)**

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on.

**High Beam Indicator Light**

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlights are on and in the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.
Features of your vehicle

**Light ON Indicator Light**
- This indicator light illuminates:
  - When the tail lights or headlights are on.

**Front Fog Indicator Light**
- This indicator light illuminates:
  - When the front fog lights are on.

**Cruise Indicator Light**
- This indicator light illuminates:
  - When the cruise control system is enabled.

  ✤ For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in section 5.

**Cruise SET Indicator Light**
- This indicator light illuminates:
  - When the cruise control speed is set.

  ✤ For more details, refer to “Cruise Control System” in section 5.

**AUTO HOLD Indicator Light (if equipped)**
- This indicator light illuminates:
  - [White] When you activate the auto hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD button.
  - [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the auto hold system activated.
  - [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the auto hold system.

  In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

  ✤ For more details, refer to “Auto Hold” in chapter 5.
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:
- [Green] When you activate the lane departure warning system by pressing the LDWS button.
- [White] When system operating conditions are not satisfied.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system.

In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

※ For more details, refer to “Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)” in chapter 5.

Advanced Vehicle Safety Management (AVSM) OFF Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:
- Once you set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
  - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the AVSM system by setting on the LCD display.

※ For more details, refer to “LCD Display” in this chapter.

If this indicator stays on when AVSM OFF is not selected, the AVSM may have malfunctioned.
In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

※ For more details, refer to “Advanced Vehicle Safety Management (AVSM) System” in chapter 5.

SPORT/SNOW Mode Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:
- When you select "SPORT/SNOW" mode as drive mode.

※ For more details, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" in chapter 5.

✽✽ NOTICE
If you activate the Driving Mode Theme on the User Settings Mode of the LCD display (if equipped), the SPORT and SNOW indicators will not turn on the instrument cluster.
Features of your vehicle

**ECO Indicator Light**
(if equipped)

The ECO indicator light informs you to drive economically, and turns on green in accordance with the driving condition.

This indicator light illuminates:
- [Green] when you are driving economically.
- The drive’s driving habit and road condition can affect fuel efficiency.
- The light will not display:
  - If the condition does not meet economical driving such as P (Park), N (Neutral), R (Reverse), or sports mode.
  - While the instant fuel Economy of the trip computer is display on the LCD display.
- On the "User Settings Mode" of the LCD display, you can activate or deactivate the ECO driving mode.

※ For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

**WARNING**

Do not watch the ECO indicator light while driving. This will distract you and may cause an accident that results in severe personal injury.
HEAD UP DISPLAY (HUD) (IF EQUIPPED)

Description

The head up display is a transparent display which projects a shadow of some information of the instrument cluster and navigation on the windshield glass.

- The head up display image on the windshield glass may be invisible when:
  - Sitting posture is bad.
  - Wearing a polarized sunglasses.
  - There is an object on the cover of the head up display.
  - Driving on a wet road.
  - An inadequate lighting is turned on inside the vehicle.
  - Any light comes from the outside.
  - Wearing glasses.
- If the head up display image is not shown well, adjust the height or illumination of the head up display in the LCD display.

※ For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

• When the head up display needs inspection or repair, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ WARNING - Head Up Display

• Do not tint the front windshield glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head up display image may be invisible.
• Do not place any accessories on the crash pad or attach any objects on the windshield glass.
• As the Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system is a supplemental device for your safe driving, it may be dangerous to rely on only the BSD information of the head up display image when changing the lane. Always pay attention to drive safely.
Head Up Display ON/OFF

To activate the head up display, press the HUD button.
If you press the HUD button again, the head up display will be deactivated.

Head Up Display Information

1. Cruise setting speed
2. Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) information (if equipped)
3. Advanced Smart Cruise Control (ASCC) information (if equipped)
4. Road signs
5. Speedometer
6. Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information (if equipped)
7. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system information (if equipped)
8. Warning lights (Low fuel, BSD)

⚠️ CAUTION

When replacing the front windshield glass of the vehicles equipped with the head up display, replace it with a windshield glass designed for the head up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windshield glass.
On the "User settings Mode" of the LCD display, you can activate or deactivate the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation, Smart Cruise Control (SCC), Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS), and Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system information.

**NOTICE**
If you select the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information as HUD contents, the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information will not be displayed on the LCD Display.

### Head Up Display Setting
On the LCD display, you can change the head up display settings as follows.
1. Display height
2. Illumination
3. Font color
4. Font size
5. Contents setting

*For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.
Features of your vehicle

PARKING ASSIST SYSTEM

This system is a supplemental system and it is not intended to nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver.

The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Whenever moving pay as much attention to what is in front of and behind you as you would in a vehicle without a parking assist system.

WARNING
The parking assist system should only be considered as a supplementary function. The driver must check the front and rear view. The operational function of the parking assist system can be affected by many factors and conditions of the surroundings, so the responsibility rests always with the driver.

- This system activates when the parking assist button is pressed with the Engine Start/Stop Button ON.
• The parking assist button turns on automatically and activates the parking assist system when you shift the gear to the R (Reverse) position. It will turn off automatically when you shift out of R (Reverse) and drive above 12.4 mph (20 km/h).

• The sensing distance while backing up is approximately 47 in. (120 cm) when you are driving less than 6.2 mph (10 km/h).

• The sensing distance while moving forward is approximately 39 in. (100 cm) when you are driving less than 6.2 mph (10 km/h).

• When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognized first.

✽ NOTICE
It may not operate if it’s distance from the object is already less than approximately 10 in. (25 cm) when the system is ON.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distance from object</th>
<th>Warning indicator</th>
<th>Warning sound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When driving forward</td>
<td>When driving rearward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39 in. ~ 24 in. (100cm~60cm)</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47 in. ~ 24 in. (120cm~60cm)</td>
<td>Rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 in. ~ 12 in. (60cm~30cm)</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 in. (30cm)</td>
<td>Front</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

✽ NOTICE
The indicator may differ from the illustration as objects or sensors status. If the indicator blinks, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Non-operational conditions of parking assist system

Parking assist system may not operate normally when:
1. Moisture is frozen to the sensor. (It will operate normally when moisture melts.)
2. Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked. (It will operate normally when the material is removed or the sensor is no longer blocked.)
3. Sensor is stained with foreign matter such as snow or water. (Sensing range will return to normal when removed.)

There is a possibility of parking assist system malfunction when:
1. Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradient.
2. Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
3. Heavy rain or water spray.
4. Wireless transmitters or mobile phones present near the sensor.
5. Sensor is covered with snow.

Detecting range may decrease when:
1. Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
2. Undetectable objects smaller than 39 in (1 m) and narrower than 5.5 in (14 cm) in diameter.

The following objects may not be recognized by the sensor:
1. Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
2. Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
NOTICE
1. The warning may not sound sequentially depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
2. The parking assist system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
3. Sensor may not recognize objects less than 12 in (30 cm) from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use with caution.
4. When the sensor is frozen or stained with snow or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
5. Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.

NOTICE
This system can only sense objects within the range and location of the sensors, it can not detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed. Also, small or slim objects, or objects located between sensors may not be detected. Always visually check in front and behind the vehicle when driving. Be sure to inform any drivers in the vehicle that may be unfamiliar with the system regarding the system’s capabilities and limitations.

WARNING
Pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects on the road, particularly pedestrians, and especially children. Be aware that some objects may not be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor. Always perform a visual inspection to make sure the vehicle is clear of all obstructions before moving the vehicle in any direction.
Self-diagnosis
If you don’t hear an audible warning sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting the gear to the R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction in the rear parking assist system. If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.

⚠️ WARNING
Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a parking assist system. Always drive safely and cautiously.
The rearview camera will activate when the back-up light is ON with the ignition switch ON and the shift lever in the R position.

This system is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the navigation display while backing-up.

**NOTICE**

The rearview camera may not operate normally, when you drive in the extremely high or low temperature areas (operating temperature: -4°F ~ 149°F (-20°C ~ 65°C)).
Features of your vehicle

AROUND VIEW MONITORING SYSTEM (AVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

This is the parking support system to show around circumstance when you park the vehicle in monitor. When you push the button in [ON] position, it is operated. To cancel the system, push again.

Operating conditions
- When ignition is ON
- When the transaxle is on D, N or R
- When the vehicle speed is not over 12.4 mph (20km/h)

- When the vehicle speed is over 20km/h, the AVM system is turned off. If the vehicle speed is not over 20km/h after turning off the AVM by over speed, the AVM is not turned on. To operate again, push the button.

- When the vehicle moves backwards, regardless of On/Off of button and vehicle speed, the AVM is operated. And then, if you shift to the D position and the driving speed is over 6.2 mph (10km/h) the AVM is deactivated.

- When the trunk and driver/passenger door are opened and the outside mirror is folded, the warning is illuminated in AVM system.

- If the AVM system is not normally operated, we recommend that you contact an authorized EQUUS dealer.
LIGHTING

Battery saver function
- The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lights when the driver turns off the engine and opens the driver-side door.
- With this feature, the parking lights will be turned off automatically if the driver parks on the side of the road at night.
If necessary, to keep the lights on when the engine is turned OFF, perform the following:
1) Open the driver-side door.
2) Turn the parking lights OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

Headlight escort function
If you turn the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ACC or OFF position with the headlights ON, the headlights (and/or tail lights) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlights are turned off after 15 seconds.
The headlights can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the light switch to the OFF or Auto position.
However, if you turn the light switch to the Auto position when it is dark outside, the headlights will not be turned off.

CAUTION
If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlight escort function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamp before getting out of the vehicle.
Features of your vehicle

Lighting control

The light switch has a Headlight and a Parking light position.
To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:
(1) OFF position
(2) Auto light / AFLS position
(3) Parking light position
(4) Headlight position

Auto light/AFLS position

When the light switch is in the AUTO light position while the engine is running, the taillights and headlights will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

CAUTION

• Never place anything over sensor (1) located on the instrument panel. This will ensure better auto-light system control.
• Don’t clean the sensor using a window cleaner. The cleaner may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
• If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windshield, the Auto light system may not work properly.

ODM042244

OVI043092
**Parking light position**

When the light switch is in the parking light position, the tail, license and instrument panel lights are ON and the tail light indicator is ON.

**Headlight position**

When the light switch is in the headlight position, the head, tail, license and instrument panel lights are ON.

**High beam operation**

To turn on the high beam headlights, push the lever away from you. Pull it back for low beams. The high beam indicator will light when the headlamp high beams are switched on.

**NOTICE**

The Engine Start/Stop Button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlights.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the lights on for a prolonged time while the engine is not running.
Features of your vehicle

⚠️ WARNING
Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you. It will return to the normal (low beam) position when released. The headlight switch does not need to be on to use this flashing feature.

Turn signals and lane change signals

The ignition switch must be on for the turn signals to function. To turn on the turn signals, move the lever up or down (A). Green arrow indicators on the instrument panel indicate which turn signal is operating. They will self-cancel after a turn is completed. If the indicator continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to the OFF position.
To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released. If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

**One-touch triple turn signal**
To activate an one-touch triple turn signal move the turn signal lever slightly for less than 1.8 seconds and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3 times. You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to “User Settings” in this section.

*NOTICE*
If an indicator flash is abnormally quick or slow, a bulb may be burned out or have a poor electrical connection in the circuit.

**Front fog light**
Fog lights are used to provide improved visibility and avoid accidents when visibility is poor due to fog, rain or snow etc. The fog lights will turn on when fog light switch (1) is turned to ON after the headlights are turned on. To turn off the fog lights, turn the switch to OFF.
Features of your vehicle

Daytime running light (if equipped)

Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, and it is especially helpful after dawn and before sunset. The DRL system will turn OFF when:
1. The headlight switch is ON.
2. The parking brake is applied.
3. Engine stops.

Headlight leveling device

Automatic type

It automatically adjusts the headlight beam level according to the number of passengers and the loading weight in the luggage area. It offers the proper headlight beam under various conditions.

⚠️ CAUTION

When in operation, the fog lights consume large amounts of vehicle electrical power. Only use the fog lights when visibility is poor or unnecessary battery and generator drain could occur.

⚠️ WARNING

If it is not working properly, or the headlight beam is isolated to the high or low position, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer. Don't attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.
Features of your vehicle

AFLS (Adaptive Front Lighting System) (if equipped)

Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and leveling the headlamp. Turn the knob to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON. To turn off the AFLS, turn the knob to the other position. After turning the AFLS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but leveling operates continuously.

If the AFLS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFLS is not working properly. Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, take your vehicle to an authorized EQUUS dealer and have the system checked.
Features of your vehicle

WIPERS AND WASHERS

Windshield wipers

Operates as follows when the ignition switch is turned ON.

MIST: For a single wiping cycle, push the lever upward and release it with the lever in the OFF position. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is pushed upward and held.

OFF: Wiper is not in operation

AUTO: The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (B).

LO: Normal wiper speed
HI: Fast wiper speed

NOTICE

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windshield, defrost the windshield for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windshield wipers to ensure proper operation.

NOTICE

• When you operate the wipers, if your vehicle has a problem in any part of the wiper operation system, the wiper may operate in the LO mode regardless of the wiper switch position. In this case, have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.

• When the engine is turned off, the wiper blade sometimes may move slightly for reducing the deterioration of the windshield wipers.
Auto control
The rain sensor located on the upper end of the windshield glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob (B). If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

⚠️ CAUTION
When the Engine Start/Stop Button is ON and the windshield wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode, use caution in the following situations to avoid any injury to the hands or other parts of the body:
- Do not touch the upper end of the windshield glass facing the rain sensor.
- Do not wipe the upper end of the windshield glass with a damp or wet cloth.
- Do not put pressure on the windshield glass.

⚠️ CAUTION
When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation.
- The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode while washing the vehicle.
- Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the passenger side windshield glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.
- When starting the vehicle in winter, set the wiper switch in the OFF position. Otherwise, wipers may operate and ice may damage the windshield wiper blades. Always remove all snow and ice and defrost the windshield properly prior to operating the windshield wipers.
Windshield washers

In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. Use this function when the windshield is dirty. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, check the washer fluid level. If the fluid level is not sufficient, you will need to add appropriate non-abrasive windshield washer fluid to the washer reservoir.

The reservoir filler neck is located in the front of the engine compartment on the passenger side.

⚠️ CAUTION

To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.

⚠️ CAUTION

To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use gasoline, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.

To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not use the washer in freezing temperatures without first warming the windshield with the defrosters; the washer solution could freeze on contact with the windshield and obscure your vision.
INTERIOR LIGHT

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is not running. It may cause battery discharge.

⚠️ WARNING
Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. Accidents could happen because the view may be obscured by interior lights.

Front

- DOOR: The front and rear room lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds when doors are unlocked with the smart key as long as the doors are not opened. When the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ACC or OFF position, if any door is opened, the front or rear room lamp will stay on for approximately 20 minutes. If the door is closed, the lamps will go out in 30 seconds.
- The front and rear room lamps will go out immediately if the Engine Start/Stop Button is changed to the ON position with all doors closed.
- When the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position, if any door is opened, the front or rear room lamp will stay on continuously. If the door is closed, the lamp will go out immediately.

(1) Front map lamp
(2) Front room lamp

- : Press the button to turn the map lamp on. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger. To turn the lamp off, press the button again.
Features of your vehicle

• ROOM: Pressing the button, turns the front and rear room lamps on. To turn the lamps off, press the ROOM button again.

Rear

(1) Rear map lamp
(2) Rear room lamp

• \(\rightarrow\): Press the button to turn the rear lamp on. To turn the lamp off, press the button again.

• ROOM: Pressing the button, turns the rear room lamps on. To turn the lamps off, press the ROOM button again.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not leave the lamp switches on for an extended period of time when the vehicle is not running.
Features of your vehicle

Trunk room lamp

The trunk room lamp comes on when the trunk is opened.

⚠️ CAUTION
The trunk room lamp comes on as long as the trunk lid opens. To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the trunk lid securely after using the trunk room.

Door courtesy lamp

The door courtesy lamp comes ON when the door is opened to assist entering or exiting the vehicle. It also serves as a warning to passing vehicles that the vehicle door is open.

⚠️ CAUTION
To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the door securely after using the door.

Glove box lamp

The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

⚠️ CAUTION
To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.
Features of your vehicle

Vanity mirror lamp

Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror light.

⚠️ CAUTION
To prevent unnecessary charging system drain, close the vanity mirror cover after using the mirror.
Features of your vehicle

WELCOME SYSTEM

Puddle lamp

When all the doors (and trunk) are locked and closed, the puddle lamp will come on for about 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.
- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand into the door handle while carrying the smart key.
- When the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

Also, if the outside rearview mirror folding switch is in the AUTO position, the outside rearview mirror will unfold automatically.

Headlight

When the headlight (light switch in the headlight or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and trunk) are locked and closed, the position light and headlight will come on for 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.
- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the position light and headlight will turn off immediately.

Interior light

When the interior light switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and trunk) are locked and closed, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.
- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand into the door handle while carrying the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the room lamp will turn off immediately.
DEFROSTER

CAUTION
To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

NOTICE
If you want to defrost and defog the front windshield, refer to “Windshield defrosting and defogging” in this section.

Rear window defroster

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the rear window, while the engine is running.
To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the center facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.

The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the ignition switch is turned off. To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Outside rearview mirror defroster
If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

Front wiper deicer
If your vehicle is equipped with the front wiper deicer, it will be operating at the same time you operate the rear window defroster.
Features of your vehicle

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

■ Front

1. Driver’s temperature control knob
2. Front windshield defrost button
3. Rear window defrost button
4. AUTO (automatic control) button
5. Fan speed control button
6. OFF button
7. Air intake control button / AQS (Air quality system) button
8. Air conditioning button
9. 3 zone (Driver, passenger and rear side) control button
10. Passenger's temperature control knob
11. Mode selection button
12. Climate information screen selection button
13. Fan speed control button
14. Off button (Rear)
15. Mode selection button (Rear)
16. AUTO (automatic control) button
17. Rear side temperature control button
18. AUTO (automatic control) or off button
19. LCD display

■ Rear

- Type A

- Type B

OVI043107/OVI043423/OVI043424/OVI043421
Features of your vehicle

Automatic heating and air conditioning

1. Press the AUTO button. The modes, fan speeds, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically according to the temperature setting.

2. Press the TEMP button to set the desired temperature.

* NOTICE
- To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following: Mode selection button, Front windshield defrost button, Fan speed control button. The selected function will be controlled manually while other functions operate automatically.
- For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 73°F (23°C).
**NOTICE**

Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

---

**Manual heating and air conditioning**

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected. When pressing any button except the AUTO button while using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
   - For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling:
     - Heating: 
     - Cooling: 
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.

Press the AUTO button in order to convert to full automatic control of the system.

---

**3 Zone control button**

1. Press the 3 zone button to operate the front passenger’s temperature, rear side temperature, and rear side mode individually. The indicator on the 3 zone button will be illuminated. Pressing the rear side temperature button, rear side mode button or turning the front passenger’s temperature knob will activate the 3 zone mode as well.
2. Press the 3 zone button again to deactivate the 3 zone mode. The front passenger’s temperature, rear side temperature, and rear side mode will be set like the driver’s side.
**NOTICE**

You can activate or deactivate the rear climate control button on the rear armrest by using the RSE LOCKED button on the rear armrest or in AVN (Audio, Video, and Navigation). Detailed information for AVN is described in a separately supplied manual.
**Rear outlet vents (F)**
- The air flow of the Rear outlet vents is controlled by the front climate control system and delivered through the inside air duct of the front doors. If the door is open or not closed completely, the air flow of the Rear outlet vent is not delivered properly. Make sure the front doors are closed completely.
- The air flow of the Rear outlet vents may be weaker than the instrument panel vents for the long air duct in the front doors.

![Mode selection](image)

- **Face-Level (B, D, F, G)**
  - Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

- **Bi-Level (B, C, D, E, F, G, H)**
  - Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

**Front button**
The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.
Features of your vehicle

Floor & Defrost
(A, C, E, D, G, H)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windshield with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.

Floor-Level (A, C, E, D, G, H)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windshield and side window defrosters.

Rear button

If you press the rear mode selection button, the indicator on the 3 Zone button will be illuminated, and you can adjust the rear mode individually. If you press the 3 Zone button, the indicator on the 3 Zone button will be turned off, and the rear mode will be operated like the front mode.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:

Face-level (G)

Air flow is toward the upper body and face

Bi-level (G, H)

Air flow is toward the face and floor

Floor lever (G, H)

Air flow is toward the floor.

*NOTICE*

If the front windshield defrost button is pressed, the rear air flow is not operated.
Defrost-Level (A)
Most of the air flow is directed to the windshield with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

Instrument panel vents
The outlet vents can be opened or closed separately using the thumb-wheel. To close the vent, rotate it left to the maximum position. To open the vent, rotate it right to the desired position.
Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

Temperature control
The temperature will increase to the maximum (HI) by turning the knob to the right for the front seat and pressing the up (▲) button for the rear seat.
The temperature will decrease to the minimum (Lo) by turning the knob to the left for the front seat and pressing the down (\(\downarrow\)) button for the rear seat. When turning the knob for the front seat and pressing the button for the rear seat, the temperature will increase or decrease by 1°F / 0.5°C. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

If you turn the front passenger's temperature knob or if you press the rear temperature button, the indicator on the 3 Zone button will be illuminated, and you can adjust the front passenger's and rear temperature individually. If you press the 3 Zone button, the indicator on the 3 Zone button will be turned off, and the front passenger's and rear temperature will be adjusted like the driver's temperature.

**Temperature conversion**

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Fahrenheit. This is a normal condition. You can switch the temperature mode between Centigrade to Fahrenheit as follows:

While pressing the OFF button, depress the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more. The display will change from Centigrade to Fahrenheit, or from Fahrenheit to Centigrade.

**Air intake control**

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position. To change the air intake control position, push the control button.
Features of your vehicle

Recirculated air position
With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position
With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

NOTICE
Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

WARNING
- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.
- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible while driving.
**Air quality system**

The air inflow from outside the vehicle can be automatically controlled. Press the button to activate the air quality control system.

When using AQS mode, AQS (Air Quality System) automatically senses outdoor air pollutants and minimizes them from entering the vehicle, however, unpleasant or foul odors that might be present may still be noticeable within the vehicle.

**Exhaust gas cutoff mode:**

Air enters the vehicle from the outside. If exhaust gas enters the vehicle from the outside, the exhaust gas cutoff mode is automatically converted from the outside air position to the recirculated air position to prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

**NOTICE**

It should be noted that prolonged operation of the heating system in recirculation mode will give rise to misting of the windshield and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment will become stale. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculation mode selected may result in the air within the passenger compartment becoming excessively dry.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

If the windows fog up with the Recirculation or A.Q.S mode selected, set the air intake control to the fresh air position or A.Q.S control to OFF.
Features of your vehicle

**Fan speed control**

- Front
- Rear

The fan speed can be set to the desired speed by pushing the fan speed control button.
The higher the fan speed is, the more air is delivered.
Pressing the OFF button turns off the fan.

*NOTICE*
For better sound quality, fan speed may automatically slow down for a couple of minutes when you activate voice recognition or hands free.

**Air conditioning**

Push the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).
Push the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.
Features of your vehicle

**OFF mode**

Push the OFF button of the front to turn off the air climate control system. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the ignition switch is in the ON position. When the OFF button of the rear is pressed, the rear blower will turn off.

**Climate information screen selection button**

To change the screen into the climate information screen, press the climate information screen selection button.

---

**System operation**

**Ventilation**

1. Set the mode to the ⬂ position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.

**Heating**

1. Set the mode to the ⬁ position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the fan speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
   - If the windshield fogs up, set the mode to the ⬀ or press the front defrost button ⬈.
Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the car through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.

- Air for the heating/cooling system is drawn in through the grilles just ahead of the windshield. Care should be taken that these are not blocked by leaves, snow, ice or other obstructions.

- To prevent interior fog on the windshield, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and fan speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to desired temperature.

Air conditioning

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.
4. Adjust the fan speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

 NOTICE

- When using the air conditioning system, monitor the engine temperature gauge closely while driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower fan but turn the air conditioning system off if the engine temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.

- When opening the windows in humid weather air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. Since excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be operated with the windows closed.
Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system.
- During air conditioning system operation, you may occasionally notice a slight change in engine speed as the air conditioning compressor cycles. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from the recirculated air to the fresh outside air position.

- When using the air conditioning system, you may notice clear water dripping (or even puddling) on the ground under the passenger side of the vehicle. This is a normal system operation characteristic.
- Operating the air conditioning system in the recirculated air position provides maximum cooling, however, continual operation in this mode may cause the air inside the vehicle to become stale.
- During cooling operation, you may occasionally notice a misty air flow because of rapid cooling and humid air intake. This is a normal system operation characteristic.

Climate control air filter

The climate control air filter installed behind the glove box filters the dust or other pollutants that come into the vehicle from the outside through the heating and air conditioning system. If dust or other pollutants accumulate in the filter over a period of time, the air flow from the air vents may decrease, resulting in moisture accumulation on the inside of the windshield even when the outside (fresh) air position is selected. If this happens, have the climate control air filter replaced by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
NOTICE

• Replace the filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or once a year. If the car is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent air conditioner filter inspections and changes are required.

• When the air flow rate suddenly decreases, the system should be checked at an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also has a negative impact on the air conditioning system. Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, have the system inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

WARNING

Because the refrigerant is at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used, otherwise damage to the vehicle and personal injury may occur.
Features of your vehicle

WINDSHIELD DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

⚠️ WARNING - Windshield heating
Do not use the 🎈 or 🤾 position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield could cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, causing loss of visibility could cause an accident resulting in serious injury or death. In this case, set the mode selection knob or button to the 🎈 position and fan speed control knob or button to a lower speed.

✨ NOTICE
If the engine temperature is still cold after starting, then a brief engine warm up period may be required for the vented air flow to become warm or hot.

- For maximum defrosting, set the temperature control to the extreme right/hot position and the fan speed control to the highest speed.
- If warm air to the floor is desired while defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windshield, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the hood and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield.

To defog inside windshield

1. Select desired fan speed.
2. Select desired temperature.
3. Press the defrost button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the outside (fresh) air position is not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button manually.
If the 🎈 position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.
**To defrost outside windshield**

1. Set the fan speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defrost button ( ).
4. The outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.
   If the position is selected, lower fan speed is adjusted to a higher fan speed.

**Defogging logic**

To reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windshield, the air intake is controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or position. To cancel or return the defogging logic, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
2. Select the defrost position pressing defrost button ( ).
3. While holding the air conditioning button (A/C) pressed, press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.
   The indicator on the air intake control button blinks 3 times with 0.5 second of interval. It indicates that the defogging logic is canceled or returned to the programmed status.
If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the system resets to the preprogrammed defogging logic.

**Auto defogging system (if equipped)**

Auto defogging reduces the probability of fogging up the inside of the windshield by automatically sensing the moisture on the inside of the windshield.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

This indicator illuminates when the auto defogging system senses the moisture on the inside of the windshield and operates.

If more moisture is in the vehicle, the automated steps operate as follows:

If auto defogging does not defog the window at step 1, outside air position, step 2, blowing air toward the windshield occurs.

**Step 1 : Outside air position**

**Step 2 : Operating the air conditioning**

**Step 3 : Blowing air toward the windshield**

**Step 4 : Increasing air flow toward the windshield**
The auto defogging system is automatically activated when the conditions are met. However, if you would like to cancel the auto defogging system, press the front defroster button 4 times within 2 seconds while pressing the AUTO button. The indicator of the front defroster button will blink 3 times to notify you that the system is cancelled. To use the auto defogging system again, follow the procedures mentioned above.

If the battery has been disconnected or discharged, it resets to the auto defogging status.

**NOTICE**
When the air conditioning is turned on and the outside air position is selected by the auto defogging system, if you try to turn off the air conditioning and select the recirculated air position, the indicator will blink 3 times and the air conditioning will not be turned off and recirculated air position will not be selected.

**CAUTION**

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the upper end of the driver side windshield glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.
Features of your vehicle

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS
These compartments can be used to store small items required by the driver or passengers.

⚠️ CAUTION
- To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.
- Always keep the storage compartment covers closed while driving. Do not attempt to place so many items in the storage compartment that the storage compartment cover cannot close securely.

⚠️ WARNING - Flammable materials
Do not store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

Center console storage
To open the center console storage, push the button (1) or (2).

Glove box
The glove box can be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key of the smartkey (1).
To open the glove box, pull the lever (2) and the glove box will automatically open. Close the glove box after use.
Features of your vehicle

**WARNING**

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove box door closed while driving.

**CAUTION**

*Do not keep food in the glove box for a long time.*

---

**Sunglass holder**

To open the sunglass holder, press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out. Push to close.

---

**WARNING**

- Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglass holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.
- Do not open the sunglass holder while the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglass holder.
- Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglass holder to prevent breakage or deformation of glasses. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in holder.
Features of your vehicle

Rear console storage

To open the console storage, push the open button. After using the console storage, make sure to close it.

Cool and warm box (if equipped)

To open the box, pull up the lever(1).
If you press the operate button (2) once, the indicator on the button will be illuminated blue and then you can keep drinks cool. If you press the operate button (2) once more, the indicator on the button will be changed to amber and then you can keep drinks warm.

To stop operating, press the operate button (2) once more. The indicator on the button will be turned off.

It takes about 5 minutes to switch from warming mode to cooling mode or from cooling mode to warming mode. There are partitions in the box to fix the drink. You can remove the partitions to fit bigger size bottles. Be careful not to damage the partitions.

⚠️ WARNING
Have the system serviced by an authorized EQUUS dealer. Inappropriate repair causes damage resulting in a fire and injury.

⚠️ CAUTION
- When you operate the cooling mode, if the drink temperature is high, it takes a long time to cool the drink. To use the cooling mode efficiently, put a cool drink in the box.
- When you operate the warming mode, if the drink temperature is low, it takes a long time to warm the drink. To use the warming mode efficiently, put a warm drink in the box.
- If the cover does not close securely, the efficiency will be low and frost will occur. Always close the cover securely.
- If you attempt to close the cover by force when drinks are not put in the box correctly, it will damage the cover.

(Continued)
- Because the temperature of the box bottom is very low, be sure frost does not occur on the drink.
- Put the cap on the bottle securely when you put the bottle in the box.
- Do not put sharp or any other object except drinks in the box. It will damage the box.
- If you keep food in the box for a long time, the food may get spoiled and smells.
- When you clean the inside of the box, use a soft cloth. Don't use strong soap, chemical detergents.
Features of your vehicle

CAUTION
There is the air inlet at the center of the rear seat and the air outlet at the inside of the trunk. If the air inlet is blocked, the efficiency will be lower. If the air inlet is blocked for a long time, the box may be damaged. Do not let the air inlet and outlet be blocked.
INTERIOR FEATURES

Ashtray

Front
To open the cover, press the cover and it will slowly open. To clean the ashtray, the plastic receptacle should be removed by lifting the plastic ashtray receptacle upward and pulling it out.

Rear
Use the rear ashtray after spreading the cover (1). To clean the ashtray, the plastic receptacle should be removed by lifting the plastic ashtray receptacle upward and pulling it out.

⚠️ WARNING - Ashtray use
- Do not use the vehicle’s ashtrays as waste receptacles.
- Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.
Features of your vehicle

Cup holder

**WARNING - Hot liquids**
- Do not place uncovered cups of hot liquid in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion. If the hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- To reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of sudden stop or collision, do not place uncovered or unsecured bottles, glasses, cans, etc., in the cup holder while the vehicle is in motion.

**WARNING**
Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a vehicle that is heated up. It may explode.

Front
To open the cover, press the cover and it will slowly open.

Rear (A)
To open the cover, press the button and it will slowly open.

Rear (B) (if equipped)
To open the cover, press the cover and it will slowly open.

Cups or small beverage cans may be placed in the cup holders.
Features of your vehicle

Sunvisor

Use the sunvisor to shield direct light through the front or side windows.
To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.
To use the sunvisor for the side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).
To use the vanity mirror, pull down the visor and slide the mirror cover (3).
Adjust the sunvisor extension forward or backward (4).
The ticket holder (5) is provided for holding a tollgate ticket.

⚠️ CAUTION - Vanity mirror lamp
Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use. If the vanity mirror is not closed securely, the lamp will stay on and could result in battery discharge and possible sunvisor damage.

⚠️ WARNING
For your safety, do not obstruct your vision when using the sunvisor.

Rear vanity mirror (if equipped)

To use the rear vanity mirror, press the cover and it will slowly open and the mirror lamp will turn on.

⚠️ CAUTION
Close the mirror cover securely. If the mirror cover is not closed, the lamp will stay on and could result in battery discharge and possible mirror damage.
The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 10 amps with the engine running.

When using the front power outlet, you can close the center console cover after pulling out the wire through the front corner of the both side of the center console.

(The USB charger and cable are not provided in your vehicle.)
Features of your vehicle

**CAUTION**
- Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12V electric accessories which are less than 10A in electric capacity.
- Adjust the air-conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.
- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle’s power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.

**WARNING**
Do not put a finger or a foreign element (pin, etc.) into a power outlet and do not touch with a wet hand. You may get an electric shock.

**CAUTION**
*Do not hang heavy clothes, since those may damage the hook.*

Clothes hanger

To use the hanger, pull down the upper portion of hanger.
Bag hanger (if equipped)

Pull the strap (1) to hang a bag on the hook (2).
When you are not using the hook, fold the hook.

Floor mat anchor(s) (if equipped)

When using a floor mat on the front floor carpet, make sure it attaches to the floor mat anchor(s) in your vehicle. This keeps the floor mat from sliding forward.

---

**WARNING**

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle’s floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle’s floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

**IMPORTANT** - Your vehicle was manufactured with driver’s side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, EQUUS recommends that only the EQUUS floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.
Luggage net (holder)

To keep items from shifting in the cargo area, you can use the holders located in the cargo area to attach the luggage net.

⚠️ CAUTION

*To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.*

⚠️ WARNING

*Avoid eye injury. DO NOT over-stretch the luggage net, ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net’s recoil path. DO NOT use when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.*

Rear curtain

To raise the rear curtain, depress the button. To lower the rear curtain, depress the button again.

The rear curtain will be lowered automatically when you shift the shift lever into R (Reverse) and raised automatically when you shift the shift lever from R (Reverse) into P (Park).
After the rear curtain is lowered by shifting the shift lever into R (Reverse), if you drive more than 12mph (20km/h) with the shift lever in D (Drive), the rear curtain will be raised automatically.

**CAUTION**

_Do not lower or raise the rear curtain by hand. It could cause motor failure._

**Aux, USB and iPod® port**

If your vehicle has an aux and/or USB (universal serial bus) port or iPod® port, you can use an aux port to connect audio devices and a USB port to plug in a USB, and an iPod® port to plug in an iPod®.

**NOTICE**

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

* iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.
MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM

 NOTICE

• If you install an aftermarket HID head lamp, your vehicle’s audio and electronic device may malfunction.
• Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration.

Antenna

Glass antenna

When the radio power switch is turned on while the Engine Start/Stop Button is in either the "ON" or "ACC" position, your car will receive both AM and FM broadcast signals through the antenna in the rear window glass.

 CAUTION

• Do not clean the inside of the rear window glass with a cleaner or scraper to remove foreign deposits as this may cause damage to the antenna elements.
• Avoid adding metallic coatings such as Ni, Cd, and so on. These can disturb receiving AM and FM broadcast signals.
Features of your vehicle

Steering wheel audio control

The steering wheel may incorporate the audio control buttons.

**CAUTION**

_Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously._

**VOLUME (VOL + / - ) (1)**
- Press the up button (+) to increase volume.
- Press the down button (-) to decrease volume.

**SEEK/PRESET ( / ) (2)**
If the SEEK/PRESET button is pressed for 0.8 seconds or more, it will function as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**
It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button. It will SEEK until you release the button.

**MEDIA mode**
It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

**MODE (3)**
Press the MODE button to select Radio, disc, or AUX.

**MUTE (4)**
- Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

**NOTICE**
Detailed information is described in a separately supplied manual.

If the SEEK/PRESET button is pressed for less than 0.8 seconds, it will function as follows in each mode.

**RADIO mode**
It will function as the PRESET STATION select buttons.

**MEDIA mode**
It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.
### Driving your vehicle

**Before driving** ...................................... 5-4
- Before entering vehicle ................................ 5-4
- Necessary inspections ................................... 5-4
- Before starting ......................................... 5-5

**Engine Start/Stop Button** ............................. 5-7
- Illuminated Engine Start/Stop Button .................. 5-7
- Engine Start/Stop Button position ...................... 5-7

**Starting the engine** .................................. 5-10

**Automatic transmission** ............................... 5-12
- Automatic transmission operation ...................... 5-12
- Good driving practices ................................... 5-16

**Brake system** ......................................... 5-19
- Power brakes ............................................ 5-19
- Electric parking brake (EPB) ............................ 5-21
- Emergency braking ...................................... 5-24
- AUTO HOLD ............................................. 5-25
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ........................... 5-29
- Electronic stability control (ESC) ...................... 5-32
- Hill-start assist control (HAC) .......................... 5-36
- Good braking practices ................................... 5-37

**Drive mode integrated control system** ............... 5-39

**Electronic controlled suspension (ECS)** ............. 5-41

**Advanced smart cruise control system** ............... 5-44
- Smart cruise control speed ............................. 5-45
- Smart cruise control vehicle to vehicle distance ... 5-49
- Distance to distance vehicle sensor .................. 5-51
- To convert to cruise control mode ..................... 5-52
- Limitations of the system ............................... 5-52

**Lane departure warning system (LDWS)** ............... 5-57
- LDWS operation ........................................ 5-58

**Advanced vehicle safety management (VSM)** ....... 5-61

**Blind spot detection system (BSD)** .................. 5-64
- Operating conditions ................................. 5-65
- Warning type ........................................... 5-65
- Detecting sensor ........................................ 5-66
- Warning message ....................................... 5-67
- Rear cross traffic alert ................................. 5-67
- Non-operating condition ............................... 5-69

**Economical operation** ................................. 5-71

**Special driving conditions** ........................... 5-73
- Hazardous driving conditions ......................... 5-73
- Rocking the vehicle ..................................... 5-73
- Smooth cornering ....................................... 5-74
- Driving at night ........................................ 5-75
- Driving in the rain ...................................... 5-75
- Driving in flooded areas ............................... 5-76
- Driving off-road ........................................ 5-76
- Highway driving ........................................ 5-76
Winter driving

- Snowy or icy conditions
- Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant
- Check battery and cables
- Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary
- Check spark plugs and ignition system
- To keep locks from freezing
- Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system
- Do not let your parking brake freeze
- Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath
- Carry emergency equipment

Vehicle load limit

- Tire and loading information label
- Certification label

Vehicle weight

- Base curb weight
- Vehicle curb weight
- Cargo weight
- GAW (Gross axle weight)
- GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)
- GVW (Gross vehicle weight)
- GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

Trailer towing

Vehicle weight

- Base curb weight
- Vehicle curb weight
- Cargo weight
- GAW (Gross axle weight)
- GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)
- GVW (Gross vehicle weight)
- GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)

Winter driving

- Snowy or icy conditions
- Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant
- Check battery and cables
- Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary
- Check spark plugs and ignition system
- To keep locks from freezing
- Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system
- Do not let your parking brake freeze
- Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath
- Carry emergency equipment
WARNING - ENGINE EXHAUST CAN BE DANGEROUS!

Engine exhaust fumes can be extremely dangerous. If, at any time, you smell exhaust fumes inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately.

• Do not inhale exhaust fumes.
  Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless gas that can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

• Be sure the exhaust system does not leak.
  The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the car, have the exhaust system checked as soon as possible by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

• Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.
  Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Never run the engine in your garage any longer than it takes to start the engine and back the car out.

• Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the car.
  If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the car, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan operating at one of the higher speeds so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

If you must drive with the trunk lid open because you are carrying objects that make this necessary:
1. Close all windows.
2. Open side vents.
3. Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face" and the fan at one of the higher speeds.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, be sure the ventilation air intakes located just in front of the windshield are kept clear of snow, ice, leaves or other obstructions.
Driving your vehicle

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering vehicle
- Be sure that all windows, outside mirror(s), and outside lights are clean.
- Check the condition of the tires.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to back up.

Necessary inspections
Fluid levels, such as engine oil, engine coolant, brake fluid, and washer fluid should be checked on a regular basis, with the exact interval depending on the fluid. Further details are provided in section 7, “Maintenance”.

⚠️ CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING
Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

⚠️ WARNING
Driving while distracted can result in a loss of vehicle control, that may lead to an accident, severe personal injury, and death. The driver’s primary responsibility is in the safe and legal operation of a vehicle, and use of any handheld devices, other equipment, or vehicle systems which take the driver’s eyes, attention and focus away from the safe operation of a vehicle or which are not permissible by law should never be used during operation of the vehicle.
Before starting

- Close and lock all doors.
- Position the seat so that all controls are easily reached.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Be sure that all lights work.
- Check all gauges.
- Check the operation of warning lights when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position.
- Release the parking brake and make sure the brake warning light goes out.

For safe operation, be sure you are familiar with your vehicle and its equipment.

⚠️ WARNING
All passengers must be properly belted whenever the vehicle is moving. Refer to “Seat belts” in section 3 for more information on their proper use.

⚠️ WARNING - Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs
Drinking and driving is dangerous. Drunk driving is the number one contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Driving while under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving drunk. You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive.
If you are drinking or taking drugs, don’t drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a cab.
Driving your vehicle

⚠️ WARNING

• When you intend to park or stop the vehicle with the engine on, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. It may overheat the engine or exhaust system and cause fire.

• When you make a sudden stop or turn the steering wheel rapidly, loose objects may drop on the floor and it could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, possibly causing an accident. Keep all things in the vehicle safely stored.

• If you do not focus on driving, it may cause an accident. Be careful when operating controls such as the audio or heater. It is the responsibility of the driver to always be attentive to the task of driving and drive safely.
**ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON**

**Illuminated Engine Start/Stop Button**
Whenever the front door is opened, the Engine Start/Stop Button will illuminate for your convenience. The light will go off after about 30 seconds when the door is closed.

**Engine Start/Stop Button position**

**OFF**
To turn off the engine, press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ON position and the shift lever in P(Park). When you press the Engine Start/Stop Button without the shift lever in P(Park), the Engine Start/Stop Button does not turn to the OFF position, but turns to the ACC position.

* **NOTICE**
When you turn off the engine, the vehicle should be stopped.

---

**WARNING - Emergency situation**
In an emergency situation while the vehicle is in motion, you are able to turn the engine off and to the ACC position by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for more than 2 seconds or 3 times successively within 3 seconds. If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.
Driving your vehicle

**ACC (Accessory)**
Press the Engine Start/Stop Button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.
The electrical accessories are operative.
If you leave the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging.

**ON**
Press the Engine Start/Stop Button while it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.
The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started. Do not leave in the ON position for a long time if the engine is not running to prevent battery discharge.

**START**
To start the engine, press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop Button with the shift lever in the P(Park) or the N(Neutral) position.
For your safety, start the engine with the shift lever in the P(Park) position.

**NOTICE**
- If you press the Engine Start/Stop Button without depressing the brake pedal, the engine does not start and the Engine Start/Stop Button changes as follows:
  OFF → ACC → ON → OFF
- If you leave the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ACC or the ON position for a long time, the battery will be discharged.

**WARNING**
- Never press the Engine Start/Stop Button while the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency situation. This would result in the engine turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- Before leaving the driver’s seat, always make sure the shift lever is engaged in P (Park), set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

(Continued)
Driving your vehicle

(Continued)

- Never reach for the Engine Start/Stop Button, or any other controls through the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area could cause a loss of vehicle control, an accident and serious bodily injury or death.

- Do not place any movable objects around the driver’s seat as they may move while driving, interfere with the driver and lead to an accident.
Driving your vehicle

STARTING THE ENGINE

**WARNING**
Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes (high heels, slippers, ski boots, etc.) may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedal.

**CAUTION**
If the engine stalls while you are in motion, do not attempt to move the shift lever to the P (Park) position. If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N(Neutral) position while the vehicle is still moving and press the Engine Start/Stop Button in an attempt to restart the engine.

1. Carry the smart key or leave it inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure the parking brake is firmly applied.
3. Place the shift lever in the P(Park) position.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the Engine Start/Stop Button.
6. In extremely cold weather (below 0°F / -18°C) or after the vehicle has not been operated for several days, let the engine warm up without depressing the accelerator.
   Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without depressing the accelerator.

- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from you, the engine may not start.
- When the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the warning, "Key not in vehicle" will come on, and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. The indicator will turn off while the vehicle is moving. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when using the ACC position or if the vehicle engine is on.

**WARNING**
The engine will start by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle. Never allow children or any person who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the Engine Start/Stop Button or related parts.
NOTICE

- If the battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button with the smart key. The side with the lock button should contact the Engine Start/Stop Button directly. When you press the Engine Start/Stop Button directly with the smart key, the smart key should contact the button at a right angle.

- When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you can't start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop Button for 10 seconds with the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ACC. The engine can start without depressing the brake pedal. But for your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.

CAUTION

Do not press the Engine Start/Stop Button for more than 5 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is disconnected.
Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has 8 forward speeds and one reverse speed. The individual speeds are selected automatically, depending on the position of the shift lever.

**NOTICE**

The first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt.

Depress the brake pedal and the lock release button when shifting.
(If the shift lock system is not equipped, it is not necessary to depress the brake pedal. However, it is recommended to depress the brake pedal to avoid inadvertent movement of the vehicle.)

Press the lock release button when shifting.

The shift lever can be shifted freely.
Always, depress the brake pedal when shifting from N (Neutral) to a forward or reverse gear.

⚠ WARNING - Automatic transmission
• Always check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a car into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
• Before leaving the driver’s seat, always make sure the shift lever is in the P (Park) position; then set the parking brake fully and shut the engine off. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed in the order identified.

⚠ CAUTION
• To avoid damage to your transmission, do not accelerate the engine in R (Reverse) or any forward gear position with the brakes on.
• When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary with engine power. Use the service brake or the parking brake.
• Do not shift from N (Neutral) or P (Park) into D (Drive), or R (Reverse) when the engine is above idle speed.

Transmission ranges
The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the shift lever position when the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the ON position.

P (Park)
Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park). This position locks the transmission and prevents the drive wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING
• Shifting into P (Park) while the vehicle is in motion will cause the drive wheels to lock which will cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
• Do not use the P (Park) position in place of the parking brake. Always make sure the shift lever is latched in the P (Park) position and set the parking brake fully.
• Never leave a child unattended in a vehicle.
Driving your vehicle

R (Reverse)
Use this position to drive the vehicle backward.

⚠️ CAUTION
Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the transmission if you shift into R (Reverse) while the vehicle is in motion, except as explained in “Rocking the vehicle” in this section.

N (Neutral)
The wheels and transmission are not engaged. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or service brakes are applied.

D (Drive)
This is the normal forward driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through a 8-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing grades, depress the accelerator fully, at which time the transmission will automatically downshift to the next lower gear (or gears, as appropriate).

✽ NOTICE
Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

Sports Mode
Whether the vehicle is stationary or in motion, sports mode is selected by pushing the shift lever from the D (Drive) position into the manual gate. To return to D (Drive) range operation, push the shift lever back into the main gate.

In sports mode, moving the shift lever backwards and forwards will allow you to make gearshifts rapidly.

Up (+) : Push the lever forward once to shift up one gear.

Down (-) : Pull the lever backwards once to shift down one gear.
NOTICE

- **In sports mode**, the driver must execute upshifts in accordance with road conditions, taking care to keep the engine speed below the red zone.
- **In sports mode**, only the 8 forward gears can be selected. To reverse or park the vehicle, move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) or P (Park) position as required.
- **In sports mode**, downshifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1st gear is automatically selected.
- **In sports mode**, when the engine rpm approaches the red zone the transmission will upshift automatically.
- If the driver moves the lever to + (up) or - (down) position, the transmission may not make the requested gear change if the next gear is outside of the allowable engine rpm range.

(Continued)

(Continued)

**Shift lock system**

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) unless the brake pedal is depressed. To shift the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or set the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the brake pedal is repeatedly depressed and released with the shift lever in the P (Park) position, a chattering noise near the shift lever may be heard. This is a normal condition.
Driving your vehicle

**WARNING**
Always fully depress the brake pedal before and while shifting out of the P (Park) position into another position to avoid inadvertent motion of the vehicle which could injure persons in or around the car.

**Shift-lock override**
If the shift lever cannot be moved from the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position into R (Reverse) position with the brake pedal depressed, continue depressing the brake, then do the following:
1. Carefully remove the cap (1) covering the shift-lock access hole.
2. Insert a screwdriver into the access hole and press down on the screwdriver.
3. Move the shift lever.
4. Have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer immediately.

**Good driving practices**
- Never move the gear shift lever from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never move the gear shift lever into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
- Be sure the car is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Never take the car out of gear and coast down a hill. This may be extremely hazardous. Always leave the car in gear when moving.
- Do not "ride" the brakes. This can cause them to overheat and malfunction. Instead, when you are driving down a long hill, slow down, shift into Sports Mode and shift to a lower gear. When you do this, engine braking will help slow the car.
- Slow down before shifting to a lower gear in sports mode. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged.
• Always use the parking brake. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the car from moving.

• Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and the vehicle to go out of control.

• Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal.

⚠️ WARNING

• Always buckle-up! In a collision, an unbelted occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly belted occupant.

• Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.

• Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.

• The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.

• Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver oversteers to reenter the roadway.

• In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.

• Never exceed posted speed limits.

⚠️ WARNING

If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.
Driving your vehicle

Moving up a steep grade from a standing start
To move up a steep grade from a standing start, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to D (Drive) and release the parking brake. Depress the accelerator gradually while releasing the service brakes.

When accelerating from a stop on a steep hill, the vehicle may have a tendency to roll backwards. Shifting the shift lever into 2 (Second Gear) will help prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards.
BRAKE SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event that the power-assisted brakes lose power because of a stalled engine or some other reason, you can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than you normally would. The stopping distance, however, will be longer.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

WARNING - Brakes

- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.
- When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Continuous brake application will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.
- Wet brakes may impair the vehicle’s ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water.

(Continued)
In the event of brake failure

If service brakes fail to operate while the vehicle is in motion, you can make an emergency stop with the parking brake. The stopping distance, however, will be much greater than normal.

Disc brakes wear indicator

Your vehicle has disc brakes. When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high-pitched warning sound from your front brakes or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Please remember that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

WARNING - Parking brake

Applying the parking brake while the vehicle is moving at normal speeds can cause a sudden loss of control of the vehicle. If you must use the parking brake to stop the vehicle, use great caution in applying the brake.

WARNING - Brake wear

This brake wear warning sound means your vehicle needs service. If you ignore this audible warning, you will eventually lose braking performance, which could lead to a serious accident.

CAUTION

- To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.
- Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.
Electric parking brake (EPB)

Applying the parking brake

To engage the parking brake, first apply the brake pedal and then pull the EPB switch. Make sure that the brake warning light comes on.

To release the parking brake

To release the EPB (electric parking brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:
- Set the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal
Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (electric parking brake) automatically:
- Shift lever in P (Park)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Rear), N (Neutral) or D (Drive).
- Shift lever in N (Neutral)
  With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).
- Depress the accelerator pedal satisfying the following conditions.
  1. Engine running
  2. Driver's seat belt fastened
  3. Driver's door, engine hood and trunk closed
  4. Shift lever in R (Rear), D (Drive) or M (Mode)
Make sure the brake warning light goes off.

WARNING
Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.
**NOTICE**

- For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the Engine Start/Stop Button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.
- For your safety, press the foot brake and release the parking brake manually with EPB switch when you drive downhill or back up the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.

**EPB (electric parking brake) may be automatically applied when:**
- Requested by other systems
- The engine is turned off with the EPB applied

- If you try to drive off depressing the accelerator pedal with the EPB applied, but doesn't release automatically, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is not fastened and the engine hood in [D] gear or trunk in [R] gear is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the above situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.
Driving your vehicle

**WARNING**
- To prevent unintentional movement when stopped and leaving the vehicle, do not use the shift lever in place of the parking brake. Set the parking brake and make sure the shift lever is securely positioned in P (Park).
- Never allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch. If the EPB is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.

**CAUTION**
- A click sound may be heard while operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking lot attendant or valet, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.
- The EPB may malfunction if you drive with the EPB applied.
- When you automatically release EPB by depressing the accelerator pedal, depress it slowly.

**EPB malfunction indicator**

This warning light illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on while driving, or does not come on when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.
The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

**CAUTION**
- The EPB warning light may illuminate if the EPB switch operates abnormally. Shut the engine off and turn it on again after a few minutes. The warning light will go off and the EPB switch will operate normally. However, if the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB is not applied.

(Continued)

**Emergency braking**
If there is a problem with the foot brake while driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling and holding the EPB switch.

However, braking distance will be longer than normal condition.

**WARNING**
Do not operate the parking brake while the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.

**NOTICE**
During emergency braking by the EPB, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.
Driving your vehicle

When the EPB (electric parking brake) is not released
If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorized EQUUS dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

CAUTION
If there is a noise or burning smell after using the emergency braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.

CAUTION
If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

AUTO HOLD
The AUTO HOLD feature keeps the brakes applied after the vehicle comes to a complete stop when the shift lever is in D, R, or N. The brakes release when throttle is applied.
Driving your vehicle

Set up

1. Press the AUTO HOLD switch. The AUTO HOLD indicator will illuminate white and the system will be in the standby position.

2. When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal, the AUTO HOLD maintains the brake pressure in order to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.

3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the foot brake pedal.

4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

Leaving

If you press the accelerator pedal with the transmission in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or sports mode, the AUTO HOLD will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The indicator changes from green to white.

Cancel

If you want to release it manually or to cancel the Auto Hold operation, release the Auto Hold switch while depressing the brake pedal. The Auto Hold indicator will go out. For your safety, release the Auto Hold operation manually if the vehicle ahead is too close or during downhill driving.

⚠️ WARNING

When driving off from AUTO HOLD by applying accelerator pedal, always check the surrounding area near your vehicle. Slowly press the accelerator pedal for a smooth launch.
**NOTICE**

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened
  - The engine hood is opened
  - The trunk is opened
  - The shift lever is in P (Park)
  - The EPB is applied

- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB in such cases:
  - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and driver's door is opened
  - The engine hood is opened in [D] gear
  - The trunk is opened in [R] gear
  - The vehicle is in a standstill for more than 10 minutes
  - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope
  - The vehicle moved several times

In these cases, the brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sounds and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged.

(Continued)

(Continued)

**WARNING**

- Depress the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.

- For your safety, cancel the AUTO HOLD operation when:
  - Driving downhill.
  - Driving slowly, parking, or backing up.
  - Washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash.

**CAUTION**

If there is a malfunction with the driver’s door, hood or trunk open detection system, the AUTO HOLD may not work properly.

Take your vehicle to an authorized EQUUS dealer and have the system checked.
Driving your vehicle

When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display. Also, warning chime sounds once.

If it is impossible to apply EPB from Auto Hold, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display. Also, warning chime sounds once. In that time, apply the brake pedal.

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display. Also, warning chime sounds once.

⚠️ CAUTION
If this notice illuminates, the Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, apply the brake pedal.
When you press the [AUTO HOLD] switch, if the driver door, engine hood and trunk are not closed or the driver seat belt is not fastened, the notice will illuminate on the LCD display. Also warning chime sounds once. In that time, press the [AUTO HOLD] button after closing the driver door, engine hood and trunk and fastening the seat belt.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

**WARNING**

ABS (or ESC) will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving maneuvers. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions.

The braking distance for cars equipped with an anti-lock braking system (or Electronic Stability Control system) may be longer than for those without it in the following road conditions.

During these conditions the vehicle should be driven at reduced speeds:

- Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- With tire chains installed.

(Continued)

- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.

The safety features of an ABS (or ESC) equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.
Driving your vehicle

The ABS continuously senses the speed of the wheels. If the wheels are going to lock, the ABS system repeatedly modulates the hydraulic brake pressure to the wheels.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

In order to obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible or as hard as the situation warrants and allow the ABS to control the force being delivered to the brakes.

**NOTICE**

A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the anti-lock brake system is functioning properly.

- Even with the anti-lock brake system, your vehicle still requires sufficient stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.
- Always slow down when cornering. The anti-lock brake system cannot prevent accidents resulting from excessive speeds.
- On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

**CAUTION**

- If the ABS warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. In this case, however, your regular brakes will work normally.

(Continued)
(Continued)

- The ABS warning light will stay on for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition switch is ON. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. Contact an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.

⚠️ CAUTION

- When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and operate your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light may illuminate. Pull your car over to a safe place and stop the engine.
- Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal. Otherwise, you may have a problem with the ABS. Contact an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.

* NOTICE

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the engine may not run as smoothly and the ABS warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning.
- Do not pump your brakes!
- Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.
Check the brake warning light by turning the ignition switch ON (do not start the engine). This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off.

If the brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution while operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

The Electronic Stability control (ESC) system is designed to stabilize the vehicle during cornering maneuvers. ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies the brakes at individual wheels and intervenes in the engine management system to stabilize the vehicle.
Driving your vehicle

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is an electronic system designed to help the driver maintain vehicle control under adverse conditions. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Factors including speed, road conditions and driver steering input can all affect whether ESC will be effective in preventing a loss of control. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear a “tik-tik” sound from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.

* NOTICE
A click sound may be heard in the engine compartment when the vehicle begins to move after the engine is started. These conditions are normal and indicate that the Electronic Stability Control System is functioning properly.

** WARNING
Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. Electronic stability control (ESC) will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in turns, abrupt maneuvers and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can still result in serious accidents. Only a safe and attentive driver can prevent accidents by avoiding maneuvers that cause the vehicle to lose traction. Even with ESC installed, always follow all the normal precautions for driving - including driving at safe speeds for the conditions.

** ESC operation

ESC ON condition
- When the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned ON, ESC and ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds, then ESC is turned on.
- Press the ESC OFF button for at least half a second after turning the ignition ON to turn ESC off. (ESC OFF indicator will illuminate). To turn the ESC on, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF indicator light will go off).
- When starting the engine, you may hear a slight ticking sound. This is the ESC performing an automatic system self-check and does not indicate a problem.
When operating

When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks.

- When the Electronic Stability Control is operating properly, you can feel a slight pulsation in the vehicle. This is only the effect of brake control and indicates nothing unusual.
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, the engine rpm (revolution per minute) may not be increased even if you press the accelerator pedal deeply. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

ESC operation off

ESC OFF state

This vehicle has 2 kinds of ESC off states.

If the engine stops when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the engine, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

- ESC OFF state 1

To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF) shortly (ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF) illuminates). At this state, the engine control function does not operate. It means the traction control function does not operate. Brake control function only operates.
Driving your vehicle

• ESC OFF state 2
To cancel ESC operation, press the ESC OFF button (ESC OFF ) for more than 3 seconds. ESC OFF indicator light (ESC OFF ) illuminates and ESC OFF warning chime will sound. At this state, the engine control function and brake control function does not operate. It means the vehicle stability control function does not operate any more.

Indicator light

- ESC indicator light (blinks)

- ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)

When the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned ON, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally. The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating or illuminates when ESC fails to operate. The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

⚠️ CAUTION
Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are the same size as your original tires.
Never operate the vehicle with different diameter tires installed at the same time.

⚠️ WARNING
The Electronic Stability Control system is only a driving aid; use precautions for safe driving by slowing down on curved, snowy, or icy roads. Drive slowly and don’t attempt to accelerate whenever the ESC indicator light is blinking, or when the road surface is slippery.
Driving your vehicle

ESC OFF usage

When driving
- ESC should be turned on for daily driving whenever possible.
- To turn ESC off while driving, press the ESC OFF button while driving on a flat road surface.

⚠️ WARNING
Never press the ESC OFF button while ESC is operating (ESC indicator light blinks).
If ESC is turned off while ESC is operating, the vehicle may slip out of control.

⚠️ CAUTION
Even if you cancel the ESC function by pressing the button, the ESC function may be operated. It is normal condition for safety driving.

生物质燃料
- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, ensure that the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated and the buzzer beeps) by pressing the button for 3 seconds. If the ESC is left on, it may prevent the vehicle speed from increasing, and result in false diagnosis.
- Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or brake system operation.

⚠️ WARNING
The HAC is activated only for about 2 seconds, so always depress the accelerator pedal to begin accelerating after a stop.

Hill-start assist control (HAC)
A vehicle has the tendency to roll back on a steep hill when the driver begins to accelerate after a stop. The Hill-start Assist Control (HAC) prevents the vehicle from rolling back by operating the brakes automatically for about 2 seconds. The brakes are released when the accelerator pedal is depressed or after about 2 seconds.
**NOTICE**

- The HAC does not operate when the transmission shift lever is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.
- The HAC activates even though the ESC is off but it does not activate when the ESC has malfunctioned.

**Good braking practices**

**WARNING**

- Whenever leaving vehicle or parking, always set the parking brake as far as possible and fully engage the vehicle’s transmission into the park position. Vehicles not fully engaged in park with the parking brake set are at risk for moving inadvertently and injuring yourself or others.
- All vehicles should always have the parking brake fully engaged when parking to avoid inadvertent movement of the car which can injure occupants or pedestrians.

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the car is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your car will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the car to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the car under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and call an authorized EQUUS dealer for assistance.

- Do not coast down hills with the car out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the car in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.

- Good braking practices

- Check to be sure the parking brake is not engaged and that the parking brake indicator light is out before driving away.
- Driving through water may get the brakes wet. They can also get wet when the car is washed. Wet brakes can be dangerous! Your car will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the car to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the car under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and call an authorized EQUUS dealer for assistance.

- Do not coast down hills with the car out of gear. This is extremely hazardous. Keep the car in gear at all times, use the brakes to slow down, then shift to a lower gear so that engine braking will help you maintain a safe speed.
Driving your vehicle

- Do not "ride" the brake pedal. Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving can be dangerous because it can result in the brakes overheating and losing their effectiveness. It also increases the wear of the brake components.

- If a tire goes flat while you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the car pointed straight ahead while you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe place.

- If your car is equipped with an automatic transmission, do not let your car creep forward. To avoid creeping forward, keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the car is stopped.

- Be careful when parking on a hill. Firmly engage the parking brake and place the gear selector lever in P. If your car is facing downhill, turn the front wheels into the curb to help keep the car from rolling. If your car is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb to help keep the car from rolling.

- If there is no curb or if it is required by other conditions to keep the car from rolling, block the wheels.

- Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk that the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear selector lever in P (automatic transmission) and block the rear wheels so the car cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

- Do not hold the vehicle on the upgrade with the accelerator pedal. This can cause the transmission to overheat. Always use the brake pedal or parking brake.
DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM

DRIVE mode / SNOW mode

The drive mode may be selected according to the driver’s preference or road condition.

The system initializes to the NORMAL mode when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned off and on.

It is displayed on the AVN monitor which mode the vehicle is in as below.

- SPORT
- SNOW (if equipped)

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE button is pressed.

- NORMAL
  - SNOW
  - SPORT

* If you turn off the User Settings Mode, the ECO indicator is not displayed.

* According to the User Settings Mode, the background changes. You can turn off the background in User Settings Mode.

ECO mode

The ECO indicator is a system that helps guide you to drive economically when you have NORMAL MODE selected.

- The ECO indicator changes color from white to green when you are driving the best for economy.
- Maximize your economy by adjust your driving habit to be less aggressive and get the most time spent with green ECO indication.
**SPORT mode**

SPORT mode focuses on dynamic driving by automatically controlling the steering wheel, suspension (if ECS is equipped), engine and transmission system.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator will illuminate.
- If the SPORT mode is activated, and the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned off and on DRIVE mode will change to NORMAL mode. To turn on the SPORT mode, press DRIVE MODE button again.
- If the system is activated:
  - Deceleration from release of accelerator pedal will result in less rapid fall in RPM (revolutions per minute) than in the NORMAL mode.
  - Up-shifting is delayed.

**NOTICE**

In Sport drive mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

**NOTICE**

If you activate the Driving Mode Theme on the User Settings Mode of the LCD display (if equipped), the SPORT and SNOW indicators will not turn on the instrument cluster.

**SNOW mode (if equipped)**

Snow mode helps the driver to drive more effectively on slippery roads such as snowy or muddy roads.

- When the DRIVE MODE button is pressed and the SNOW mode is selected, the SNOW indicator will illuminate.
ELECTRONIC CONTROLLED SUSPENSION (ECS) (IF EQUIPPED)

To control the vehicle height

Push the vehicle height control button to select the HIGH mode that makes the vehicle higher than the NORMAL mode and the indicator light on the vehicle height control button will illuminate. It is useful on a rough road.

**NOTICE**

When you drive over 42 mph (70 km/h), you cannot select the HIGH mode. If the vehicle speed exceeds 42 mph (70 km/h) while driving in the HIGH mode, the NORMAL mode will be selected automatically.

Push the vehicle height control button again to select the NORMAL mode that makes the vehicle height lower than the HIGH mode. The indicator light in the vehicle height control button will go off.

**NOTICE**

- When the vehicle is in a standstill, height control button is only available if the shift lever is in P (Park) or N (Neutral).
- If the vehicle speed exceeds 99 mph (160 km) while driving in NORMAL mode, the LOW mode is selected automatically. LOW mode can not be selected manually.
- When you drive under 50 mph (80 km/h) in the LOW mode, the NORMAL mode will be selected automatically.
- When the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned off with the HIGH mode selected, the HIGH mode will be maintained. It is to prevent damage under the vehicle when parked in rough roads.
- Make sure there are no objects under the vehicle before changing vehicle height.

(Continued)
Driving your vehicle

(Continued)
• A click sound may be heard while operating ECS, but these conditions are normal and indicate that ECS is functioning properly.
• Depending on the outside temperature the vehicle height may be different.
• Do not press the Engine Start/Stop Button while operating ECS. This could cause damage to the ECS.

**NOTICE**
• If the battery is discharged or if you push the SPORT button or the vehicle height control button repeatedly in a short time, the ECS malfunction indicator may illuminate to protect the system.
• When the height is adjusted repeatedly, the height may not temporarily be adjusted for the compressor overheats. This is to prevent damage to related parts.

ECS (Electronic Controlled Suspension) malfunction warning message

If ECS malfunction warning message comes on while driving, ECS is not working properly.
We recommend that the system be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Driving your vehicle

When you load the vehicle onto the tow truck, the loading angle(1) should be smaller than 6°.

⚠️ CAUTION
If the ECS malfunction message illuminates when there is no air in the suspension, the vehicle height will be very low, so do not drive the vehicle to protect it from the projections on the surface of the ground.
Take your vehicle to an authorized EQUUS dealer by towing the vehicle and have the system checked. You should tow the vehicle as shown in the picture.
ADVANCED SMART CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The smart cruise control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain a set speed so long as it is not limited by traffic. When traffic is encountered the vehicle will slow down to maintain a set distance behind traffic without depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

(Continued)

- If the smart cruise control is left on, (CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminated) the smart cruise control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the smart cruise control system off (CRUISE indicator light OFF) when the smart cruise control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
- Use the smart cruise control system only when traveling on open highways in good weather.
- Do not use the smart cruise control when it may not be safe to keep the car at a constant speed, for instance, driving in heavy or varying traffic, or on slippery (rainy, icy or snow-covered) or winding roads or over 6% up-hill or down-hill roads.
- Pay particular attention to the driving conditions whenever using the smart cruise control system.
- Be careful when driving downhill using the smart cruise control system.
- The smart cruise control system is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

(Continued)

(1) CRUISE indicator
(2) SET indicator
(3) Set speed
(4) Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

WARNING

OVI053117

OVIDDR2912N
NOTICE
During normal smart cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the smart cruise control will energize after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.

Smart cruise control speed

To set cruise control speed:

1. Push the CRUISE (ON-OFF) button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The CRUISE indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.

2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
   - 20 mph (30 km/h) ~ 113 mph (180 km/h) : when there is no vehicle in front
   - 0 mph (0 km/h) ~ 113 mph (180 km/h) : when there is a vehicle in front

3. Push the SET- switch, and release it at the desired speed. The SET indicator light, set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD screen will illuminate. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

   If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

   On a steep grade, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly while going uphill or downhill.
To increase cruise control set speed:

Follow either of these procedures:
- Push the RES+ switch and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 5 mph (10 km/h). Release the switch at the speed you want.
- Push the RES+ switch and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the RES+ switch is operated in this manner.
- Smart Cruise will operate to a maximum setting of 111 mph. However all local speed limit laws must be followed.

To decrease the cruising speed:

Follow either of these procedures:
- Push the SET- switch and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 5 mph (10 km/h). Release the switch at the speed you want.
- Push the SET- switch and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1.0 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the SET- switch is operated in this manner.
- You can set the cruise control to any speed above 19 mph (30 km/h).

To temporarily accelerate with the cruise control on:

If you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with cruise control operation or change the set speed.
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator.
If you press the SET- switch at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again.

* NOTICE

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not regulated automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.
Driving your vehicle

Cruise control will be canceled when:

Cancelled manually
- While driving
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
  - Pull the lever (to CANCEL) located on the steering wheel.
- While stopping with operating system
  - Depress the brake pedal and pull the lever (to CANCEL).

The advanced smart cruise control turns off temporarily when the indicator on the LCD display turns off.
The CRUISE indicator is illuminated continuously.

Cancelled automatically
- The driver’s door is opened.
- The shift lever is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
- The EPB (electric parking brake) is applied.
- The vehicle speed is over 120 mph (190 km/h).
- The vehicle stops on a steep incline.
- The ESC, ABS or TCS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matters.
- When the vehicle is stopped for over 5 minutes.
- The vehicle stops and go repeatedly for a long period of time.
- The driver starts driving by depressing the accelerator pedal or pressing the RES+ button, if a vehicle stops far away ahead of your vehicle.
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for more than 1 minute.

Each of these actions will cancel the smart cruise control operation. (the SET indicator, set speed and vehicle to vehicle distance on the LCD display will go off.)

In a condition the smart cruise control is cancelled automatically, the smart cruise control will not resume even though the RES+ or SET- button is pressed. Also, the EPB (electric parking brake) will be applied when the vehicle is stopped.

⚠️ CAUTION
If the smart cruise control is cancelled by other than the reasons mentioned, we recommend have the system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
**To resume cruise control set speed:**

If any method other than the CRUISE switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RES+ switch is pushed.

It will not resume, however, if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 6 mph (10 km/h) when the sensor detects the vehicle ahead or if the vehicle speed has dropped below approximately 19 mph (30 km/h) when there is no vehicle in front of your vehicle.

**NOTICE**

Always check the road conditions when pressing the RES+ switch to resume speed.

**To turn cruise control off, do one of the following:**

- While driving
  - Push the CRUISE button

- While stopping with operating system
  - Depress the brake pedal and push the CRUISE button

*Both of these actions cancel smart cruise control operation. If you want to resume smart cruise control operation, repeat the steps provided in “To set cruise control speed” on the previous page.*
Smart cruise control vehicle to vehicle distance

To set vehicle to vehicle distance:

This function allows you to program the vehicle to maintain relative distance to the vehicle ahead without depressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

The vehicle to vehicle distance will automatically activate when the smart cruise control system is on. Select the appropriate distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle to vehicle distance changes as follows:

Distance 4 → Distance 3 → Distance 2

Distance 1

For example, if you drive at 56 mph (90 km/h), the distance maintains as follows:

Distance 4 - approximately 170 feet
Distance 3 - approximately 131 feet
Distance 2 - approximately 106 feet
Distance 1 - approximately 82 feet

NOTICE

The 'Distance 4' is always set when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.

When the lane ahead is clear:

- The vehicle speed will maintain the set speed.
- Your vehicle speed will slow down or speed up to maintain the selected distance.
- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.
Driving your vehicle

⚠️ CAUTION
- The warning chime sounds and the malfunction indicator blinks if the vehicle is unable to maintain the selected distance from the vehicle ahead.
- If the warning chime sounds, actively adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance to the vehicle ahead by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal.
- Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.

In traffic situation

⚠️ CAUTION
If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 20 mph (30 km/h)) disappears to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear. Adjust your vehicle speed for vehicles or objects that can suddenly appear in front of you by depressing the brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. However, if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds, you must depress the accelerator pedal or push the RES+ switch to start driving.
Distance to distance vehicle sensor

The sensor detects distance to the vehicle ahead.
If the sensor is covered with dirt or other foreign matter, the vehicle to vehicle distance control may not operate correctly.
Always keep the sensor clean.

SCC (Smart cruise control) malfunction indicator

The warning message/indicator illuminates when the vehicle to vehicle distance control system is not functioning normally.
Have the system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not install accessories around the sensor and do not replace the bumper by yourself. It may interfere with the sensor performance.
- Always keep the sensor and bumper clean.
- To prevent sensor cover damage from occurring, wash the car with a soft cloth.
- Do not damage the sensor or sensor area by a strong impact. If the sensor moves slightly off position, the smart cruise control system will not operate correctly.
If this occurs, have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible.
- Use only a genuine HYUNDAI sensor cover for your vehicle.
Driving your vehicle

To convert to cruise control mode:

The driver may choose to only use the cruise control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn the smart cruise control system on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the system will not be activated).
2. Pull the distance to distance switch for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "Smart cruise control (SCC) mode" and "Cruise control (CC) mode".

Limitations of the system

The smart cruise control system may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead due to road and traffic conditions.

On curves

- On curves, the smart cruise control system may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will slow down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brakes or accelerator pedal if necessary.

WARNING

When using the cruise control mode, you must manually access the distance to other vehicles as the system will not automatically brake to slow down for other vehicles.
Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the smart cruise control.

On inclines

- During uphill or downhill driving, the smart cruise control system may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will slow down when the vehicle ahead is recognized suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brakes or accelerator pedal if necessary.

Lane changing

- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognized by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The sensor may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is slower than your vehicle, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a vehicle which moves into your lane is faster than your vehicle, you may accelerate if that vehicle is traveling less than your set speed.
Driving your vehicle

- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.

Vehicle recognition

Some vehicles ahead in your lane cannot be recognized by the sensor as follows:
- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or suddenly decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

A vehicle ahead cannot be recognized correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:
- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the trunk
- When operating the steering wheel
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves

Apply the brakes or accelerator pedal if necessary.
• When vehicles are at a standstill and the vehicle in front of you changes to the next lane, be careful when your vehicle starts to move because it may not recognize the stopped vehicle in front of you.

• Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.

• Always be cautious for vehicles with higher height or vehicles carrying loads that sticks out to the back of the vehicle.
Driving your vehicle

(Continued)

Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

(Continued)

As the smart cruise control system may not recognize complex driving situations, always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.

(Continued)

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

CAUTION
The smart cruise control system may not operate temporarily due to electrical interference.
This system detects the lane with the sensor at the front windshield and warns you when your vehicle leaves the lane.

**WARNING**

- The LDWS does not make the vehicle change lanes. It is the driver's responsibility to always check the road conditions.
- Do not turn the steering wheel suddenly, when the LDWS warns that your vehicle is leaving the lane.
- If the sensor cannot detect the lane or if the vehicle speed does not exceed 43 mph (70 km/h), the LDWS won't warn you even though the vehicle leaves the lane.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of coating on the front windshield, the LDWS may not work properly.
- Prevent damage to the LDWS sensor from water or any liquid.

(Continued)

- Do not remove the LDWS parts and do not damage the sensor by a strong impact.
- Do not put objects that reflect light on the dash board.
- Always check the road conditions for you may not hear the warning chime because of audio, or external noise.

(Continued)
Driving your vehicle

**LDWS operation**

To operate the LDWS, pull the switch with the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ON position. The indicator illuminates on the cluster. To cancel the LDWS, pull the switch again.

**LDWS indicator light illuminates:**

- [Green]
  When the system operating conditions are satisfied.
- [White]
  - When system operating conditions are not satisfied (When the vehicle speed is below 43 mph (70 km/h)).
  - When the sensor does not detect the lane line.
- [Yellow]
  When there is a malfunction with the lane departure warning system. In this case, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

If your vehicle leaves the lane when the LDWS is operating and vehicle speed exceeds 43 mph (70 km/h), the warning operates as follows:
Driving your vehicle

1. Visual warning
   If you leave the lane, the lane you leave on the LCD display blinks yellow.

2. Auditory warning
   If you leave the lane, the warning sound operates.

3. Tactual warning (if equipped with pre-safe seat belt)
   If you leave the lane for about 3 seconds, the pre-safe seat belt provides haptic warning.
   You can activate or deactivate this feature. Refer to "User Settings Mode" in chapter 4.

* NOTICE
To change lanes, operate the turn signal switch then change the lane.

The LDWS does not operate when:
- The driver turns on the turn signal to change lanes.
  (When the hazard warning flasher is operated, the LDWS operates normally.)
- Driving on the lane line.
DRIVER'S ATTENTION

The driver must be cautious in the below situations for the system may not assist the driver and may not work properly.

• The lane is not visible due to snow, rain, stain, a puddle or many other things.
• The brightness of the outside changes suddenly such as passing through a tunnel.
• Not turning on the headlight or the light is weak even at night or in a tunnel.
• Difficult to distinguish the color of the lane marker from the road.
• Driving on a steep grade or a curve.
• Light reflects from the water on the road such as sunlight, streetlight or the light of oncoming vehicles.
• The lens or windshield is stained with foreign matters.
• The sensor cannot detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or heavy snow.
• The surrounding of the inside rear view mirror temperature is high due to direct light.

• The lane is very wide or narrow.
• The lane marker is damaged or indistinct.
• The shadow is on the lane marker by a median strip.
• There is a mark similar to a lane marker.
• There is a boundary structure.
• The distance from vehicle ahead is very short or the vehicle ahead drives hiding the lane marker.
• The vehicle shakes heavily.
• The lane number increases or decreases or the lane marker are crossing complicately.
• Placing something on the dashboard.
• Driving with the sun in front of you.
• Driving in areas under construction.
• The lane marker is more than two.
• The lane marker in a tunnel is hard to distinguish due to dust or grease.
• The lane marker is hard to distinguish after raining at night.
• The lane marker is hard to distinguish due to dust.
ADVANCED VEHICLE SAFETY MANAGEMENT (VSM) (IF EQUIPPED)

AVSM detects the distance from the vehicle ahead with the sensor, to warn you before collision and protect you in certain hazardous situations by using warning message, warning sound and seat belt vibration (if equipped).

- If the AVSM senses the object ahead is too close to the vehicle and if the driver needs to operate of the brake pedal or the steering wheel, the warning light illuminates. Immediately reduce your speed.
- If the AVSM senses more danger, the warning sound also operates and the seat belt vibrates. Immediately reduce your speed.

⚠️ CAUTION

Always check the road conditions to prevent danger even if the warning light does not illuminate, the warning sound does not operate or the seat belt does not vibrate.
Driving your vehicle

Brake operation
- If the AVSM senses an object ahead is too close, the brake system enters a standard mode to react promptly when the driver operates the brake pedal.
- If the driver releases the accelerator after the warning, the AVSM automatically brakes the vehicle gently.
- If the driver hits the brake to reduce vehicle speed, the brake assistant system operates to raise braking efficiency.
- If the close object is in a fair distance and the driver depresses the accelerator or releases the brake pedal, braking will stop.

Seat belt operating
The seat belt tightens when the vehicle senses a collision.

WARNING
The AVSM does not stop the vehicle completely and does not avoid collisions. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

CAUTION
- When the AVSM is controlled or turned off, make sure that the vehicle is stopped.
- When the engine is running by turning on, the AVSM is automatically turned on. If it is not required, select the AVSM OFF in USM (User Settings Mode).
- If the AVSM ON is selected in USM (User Settings Mode), if the ESC is cancelled by pressing the ESC OFF button, the AVSM function is automatically cancelled. And then it is impossible to control the AVSM manually.
Malfunction indicator

- The AVSM OFF indicator will illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop Button is turned ON, but should go off after approximately 3 seconds. If the indicator does not come on, or continuously remains on after coming on for about 3 seconds when you turn the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position, or if the indicator comes on while driving, the AVSM is not working properly. Take your vehicle to an authorized EQUUS dealer and have the system checked.
- The AVSM OFF indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator or SCC indicator comes on, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the AVSM.

**WARNING**
The AVSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices but a supplementary function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead.

**WARNING**

- Even if there is a malfunction to the brake operation of the AVSM, when you depress the brake pedal, the brake operates normally. AVSM brake operation does not operate in certain hazardous situations.
- The AVSM is designed to function above approximately 9.3 mph (15 km/h) and below approximately 111.8 mph (180 km/h).
- The AVSM does not react to:
  - Persons or animals.
  - Oncoming vehicles in the opposite lane or a vehicle in an intersection.
  - Stopped objects.
- The AVSM can not detect the objects, when:
  - The sensors are stained with dirt or covered.
  - There is heavy rain or heavy snow.

(Continued)

- There is interference by electromagnetic waves.
- There are strong radar reflections.
- Driving in a curve.
- Driving uphill or downhill.
- Driving in areas under construction.
- A object ahead is very narrow such as motorcycles or bicycles.
- A vehicle cuts in suddenly.
- The AVSM brake operation does not operate, if the driver does not release the accelerator pedal or does not operate the brake pedal.
The BSD (Blind spot detection) system uses a radar sensor to alert the driver while driving.

BLIND SPOT DETECTION SYSTEM (BSD) (IF EQUIPPED)

It senses the rear side territory of the vehicle and provides information to the driver.

(1) BSD (Blind spot detection)
   The warning range depends on your vehicle speed. However, if your vehicle is about 6 mph (10 km/h) faster than the other vehicle, the system will not warn you.

(2) LCA (Lane change assist)
   When a vehicle approaches you at high speed, the system will warn you.

(3) RCTA (Rear cross traffic alert)
   When your vehicle moves rearward, the sensor detects the approaching vehicle in the left and right side, the system will warn you.

WARNING
- Always check the road condition while driving for unexpected situations even though the BSD (Blind spot detection) system is operating.
- BSD (Blind spot detection) system is a system made for convenience. Do not solely rely on the system but always pay attention to drive safely.
Operating conditions
The indicator on the switch will illuminate when the BSD (Blind spot detection) system switch is pressed with the Engine Start/Stop Button ON. If vehicle speed exceeds 9.3 mph (15 km/h), the system will activate. If you press the switch again, the switch indicator and system will be turned off. If the ignition switch is turned OFF and ON the system returns to the previous state. When the system is not used turn the system off by turning off the switch. When the system is turned on the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.

Warning type
The system will activate when:
1. The system is on
2. Vehicle speed is above 9.3 mph (15 km/h)
3. Other vehicles are detected in the rear side

If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the system, a warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror and the head up display. If the detected vehicle is not in detecting range, the warning will turn off according to driving conditions.
Driving your vehicle

When the second stage alert is activated, a warning light will blink on the outside rearview mirror, the head up display and a alarm will sound. If you move the turn signal switch to the original position, the second stage alert will be deactivated.

The second stage alarm will activate when:
1. The first stage alert is on
2. The turn signal is on to change a lane

Detecting sensor

The sensors are located inside of the rear bumper. Always keep the rear bumper clean for the system to work properly.
Warning message

If the detecting sensor performance is low or overheated by foreign substances on the rear bumper, the message will appear to notify the driver. Also, the message may appear when there is heavy rain or in a large area with nothing to detect. In this time, check the rear bumper. If the system does not activate normally after removing the substances on the rear bumper, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.

If there is a problem with BSD, the message will appear to notify the driver. In this time, have a vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Rear cross traffic alert

When your vehicle moves backwards from a parking position, the sensor detects approaching vehicles to the left or right side direction and gives information to the driver.
Operating conditions

- When the ignition is ON, if you press the BSD switch, the switch indicator illuminates and the system turns on.
- The system operates when the vehicle speed is below 6.2 mph (10 km/h) with the shift lever in R (Rear) gear.
- The RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) detecting range is 0.5m ~ 20m based on the side direction. If the approaching vehicle speed is 2.5 mph (4 km/h) ~ 22 mph (36 km/h) within sensing range, it is detected. However, the system sensing range is different based on conditions. Always pay attention to the surroundings.

Warning type

- If the vehicle detected by sensors approaches your vehicle, the warning chime will sound and the warning light will blink on the outside rearview mirror.
- If the detected vehicle is out of the sensing range from behind your vehicle, moves in the opposite direction away from your vehicle or moves slowly, the warning is cancelled.
- The system may not operate properly due to other factors or circumstances. Always pay attention to your surroundings.

⚠️ If your vehicle's left or right side bumper is blinded by barrier or vehicles, the system sensing ability may be deteriorated.

⚠️ WARNING

- The warning light on the outside rearview mirror and the head up display will illuminate whenever a vehicle is detected at the rear side by the system. To avoid accidents, do not focus only on the warning light and neglect to see the surrounding of the vehicle.
- Drive safely even though the vehicle is equipped with a BSD (Blind spot detection) system. Do not solely rely on the system but check for yourself before changing lanes. The system may not alert the driver in some conditions so always check the surroundings while driving.
Non-operating condition

Driver's Attention

The driver must be cautious in the below situations for the system may not assist the driver and may not work properly.

- Curved roads, tollgates, etc.
- The surrounding of the sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc
- The rear bumper near the sensor is covered or hidden with a foreign matter such as a sticker, bumper guard, bicycle stand etc.
- The rear bumper is damaged or the sensor is out of place.
- The height of the vehicle shows much change such as when the trunk is loaded with heavy objects, abnormal tire pressure etc.
- Due to bad weather such as heavy rain or snow.
- A fixed object is near such as a guardrail, etc.
- A lot of amount of metal substances are near the vehicles such as a construction area.

- A big vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is near.
- A flat trailer like vehicle is near.
- When the other vehicle passes by very fast.
- When changing lanes.
- When going down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.
- When the other vehicle drives at the rear very nearby or drives very close.
- When a trailer or carrier is installed.
- When the temperature of rear bumper is high.
- When the sensors are covered by the vehicle, wall and pillar of parking lot.
- When your vehicle moves back, if the detected vehicle also moves back.
- If there is small things like shopping cart and baby carriage.
- If there is low height vehicle like sport vehicle.
- When the vehicle is close to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

• The system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced or if a repair work has been done near the sensor.
• The detection area differs according to the roads width. If the road is narrow the system may detect other vehicles in the next lane.
• On the contrary, if the road is very wide the system may not detect other vehicles.
• The system may turn off due to strong electromagnetic waves.

CAUTION

• The system may not work properly if the bumper has been replaced or if a repair work has been done near the sensor.
• The detection area differs according to the roads width. If the road is narrow the system may detect other vehicles in the next lane.
• On the contrary, if the road is very wide the system may not detect other vehicles.
• The system may turn off due to strong electromagnetic waves.
Driving your vehicle

*Outside rearview mirror may not alert the driver when:*
- The outside rearview mirror housing is severely polluted
- The window is severely polluted
- The windows are severely tinted.

*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.*

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
ECONOMICAL OPERATION

Your vehicle's fuel economy depends mainly on your style of driving, where you drive and when you drive.

Each of these factors affects how many miles (kilometers) you can get from a gallon (liter) of fuel. To operate your vehicle as economically as possible, use the following driving suggestions to help save money in both fuel and repairs:

- Drive smoothly. Accelerate at a moderate rate. Don't make "jack-rabbit" starts or full-throttle shifts and maintain a steady cruising speed. Don't race between stop-lights. Try to adjust your speed to that of the other traffic so you don't have to change speeds unnecessarily. Avoid heavy traffic whenever possible. Always maintain a safe distance from other vehicles so you can avoid unnecessary braking. This also reduces brake wear.

- Drive at a moderate speed. The faster you drive the more fuel your vehicle uses. Driving at a moderate speed, in the highest gear appropriate for the conditions, especially on the highway, is one of the most effective ways to reduce fuel consumption.

- Don't "ride" the brake pedal. This can increase fuel consumption and also increase wear on these components. In addition, driving with your foot resting on the brake pedal may cause the brakes to overheat, which reduces their effectiveness and may lead to more serious consequences.

- Take care of your tires. Keep them inflated to the recommended pressure. Incorrect inflation, either too much or too little, results in unnecessary tire wear. Check the tire pressures at least once a month.

- Be sure that the wheels are aligned correctly. Improper alignment can result from hitting curbs or driving too fast over irregular surfaces. Poor alignment causes faster tire wear and may also result in other problems as well as greater fuel consumption.

- Keep your car in good condition. For better fuel economy and reduced maintenance costs, maintain your car in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. If you drive your car in severe conditions, more frequent maintenance is required (see section 7 for details).

- Keep your car clean. For maximum service, your vehicle should be kept clean and free of corrosive materials. It is especially important that mud, dirt, ice, etc. not be allowed to accumulate on the underside of the car. This extra weight can result in increased fuel consumption and also contribute to corrosion.

- Travel lightly. Don't carry unnecessary weight in your car. Weight reduces fuel economy.
Driving your vehicle

- Don't let the engine idle longer than necessary. If you are waiting (and not in traffic), turn off your engine and restart only when you're ready to go.
- Remember, your vehicle does not require extended warm-up. After the engine has started, allow the engine to run for 10 to 20 seconds prior to placing the vehicle in gear. In very cold weather, however, give your engine a slightly longer warm-up period.
- Don't "lug" or "over-rev" the engine. Lugging is driving too slowly in too high a gear resulting in the engine bucking. If this happens, shift to a lower gear. Over-revving is racing the engine beyond its safe limit. This can be avoided by shifting at the recommended speeds.
- Use your air conditioning sparingly. The air conditioning system is operated by engine power so your fuel economy is reduced when you use it.
- Open windows at high speeds can reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy is less in crosswinds and headwinds. To help offset some of this loss, slow down when driving in these conditions.

Keeping a vehicle in good operating condition is important both for economy and safety. Therefore, have an authorized EQUUS dealer perform scheduled inspections and maintenance.

**WARNING - Engine off during motion**

Never turn the engine off to coast down hills or anytime the vehicle is in motion. The power steering and power brakes will not function properly without the engine running. Instead, keep the engine on and down-shift to an appropriate gear for engine braking effect. In addition, turning off the ignition while driving could engage the steering wheel lock resulting in loss of vehicle steering which could cause serious injury or death.
Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving conditions are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud, sand, or similar hazards, follow these suggestions:

- Drive cautiously and allow extra distance for braking.
- Avoid sudden movements in braking or steering.

**WARNING - ABS**

Do not pump the brake pedal on a vehicle equipped with ABS.

- If stalled in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid spinning the drive wheels.
- Use sand, rock salt, tire chains, or other non-slip material under the drive wheels to provide traction when stalled in ice, snow, or mud.

**WARNING - Downshifting**

Downshifting with an automatic transmission, while driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tire speed could cause the tires to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

**CAUTION**

Prolonged rocking may cause engine over-heating, transmission damage or failure, and tire damage.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and any forward gear in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission. Do not race the engine, and spin the wheels as little as possible. If you are still stuck after a few tries, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating and possible damage to the transmission.
Driving your vehicle

✽ NOTICE
The ESC system should be turned OFF prior to rocking the vehicle.

⚠️ WARNING - Spinning tires
Do not spin the wheels, especially at speeds more than 35 mph (56 km/h). Spinning the wheels at high speeds when the vehicle is stationary could cause a tire to overheat which could result in tire damage that may injure bystanders.

⚠️ WARNING
If your vehicle becomes stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., then you may attempt to rock the vehicle free by moving it forward and backward. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle. During the rocking operation the vehicle may suddenly move forward or backward as it becomes unstuck, causing injury or damage to nearby people or objects.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration. If you follow these suggestions, tire wear will be held to a minimum.
Driving at night

Because night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight, here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other driver's headlights.
- Keep your headlights clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlights will make it much more difficult to see at night. Headlight operation when using windshield wipers is mandatory in some states.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlights of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous, especially if you're not prepared for the slick pavement. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain:

- A heavy rainfall will make it harder to see and will increase the distance needed to stop your vehicle, so slow down.
- Keep your windshield wiping equipment in good shape. Replace your windshield wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield.
Driving your vehicle

- If your tires are not in good condition, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. Be sure your tires are in good shape.
- Turn on your headlights to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe you may have gotten your brakes wet, apply them lightly while driving until normal braking operation returns.

Driving in flooded areas
Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be affected.
After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times while the vehicle is moving slowly.

Driving off-road
Drive carefully off-road because your vehicle may be damaged by rocks or roots of trees. Become familiar with the off-road conditions where you are going to drive before you begin driving.

Highway driving

Tires
Adjust the tire inflation pressures to specification. Low tire inflation pressures will result in overheating and possible failure of the tires. Avoid using worn or damaged tires which may result in reduced traction or tire failure.

* NOTICE
Never exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure shown on the tires.
Driving your vehicle

**WARNING**

- Underinflated or overinflated tires can cause poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. Always check tires for proper inflation before driving. For proper tire pressures, refer to “Tires and wheels” in section 8.

- Driving on tires with no or insufficient tread is dangerous. Worn-out tires can result in loss of vehicle control, collisions, injury, and even death. Worn-out tires should be replaced as soon as possible and should never be used for driving. Always check the tire tread before driving your car. For further information and tread limits, refer to “Tires and wheels” in section 7.

*Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil*

High speed travel consumes more fuel than urban motoring. Do not forget to check both engine coolant and engine oil.

*Drive belt*

A loose or damaged drive belt may result in overheating of the engine.
Driving your vehicle

WINTER DRIVING

More severe weather conditions of winter result in greater wear and other problems. To minimize winter driving problem, you should follow these suggestions:

**Snowy or icy conditions**

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to use snow tires or to install tire chains on your tires. If snow tires are needed, it is necessary to select tires equivalent in size and type of the original equipment tires. Failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your car. Furthermore, speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices.

During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur. You need to keep sufficient distance between the vehicle in operation in front and your vehicle. Also, apply the brake gently. It should be noted that installing tire chains on the tire will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.

* NOTICE

Tire chains are not legal in all states. Check state laws before fitting tire chains.

**Snow tires**

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. Keep in mind that the traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tires. You should drive cautiously even when the roads are clear. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

⚠️ WARNING - Snow tire size

Snow tires should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tires. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

Do not install studded tires without first checking local, state and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.
Since the sidewalls of radial tires are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them. Therefore, the use of snow tires is recommended instead of snow chains. Do not mount tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. If snow chains must be used, use the AutoSock (fabric snow chain). Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.

Install the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) only on the rear tires.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Use a genuine HYUNDAI (MOBIS) parts and install it after going over the instruction.
- Make sure the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) are the correct size and type for your tires. Incorrect snow chains can cause damage to the vehicle body and suspension and may not be covered by your vehicle manufacturer warranty.
- Always check the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) installation for proper mounting after driving approximately 0.3 to 0.6 miles (0.5 to 1 km) to ensure safe mounting. Retighten or remount the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) if they are loose.

⚠️ WARNING
- Mounting chains
When mounting the AutoSock (fabric snow chain), park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning flashers and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle if available. Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing the AutoSock (fabric snow chain).
Driving your vehicle

**WARNING - Tire chains**
- The use of the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Do not exceed 20 mph (30 km/h) or the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) manufacturer’s recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked-wheel braking.

**CAUTION**
- The AutoSock (fabric snow chain) that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle’s brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.
- Stop driving and retighten the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) any time you hear them hitting the vehicle.

**Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant**
Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in section 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to assure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

**Check battery and cables**
Winter puts additional burdens on the battery system. Visually inspect the battery and cables as described in section 7. The level of charge in your battery can be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer or a service station.

**Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary**
In some climates it is recommended that a lower viscosity "winter weight" oil be used during cold weather. See section 8 for recommendations. If you aren't sure what weight oil you should use, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Check spark plugs and ignition system**
Inspect your spark plugs as described in section 7 and replace them if necessary. Also check all ignition wiring and components to be sure they are not cracked, worn or damaged in any way.
To keep locks from freezing
To keep the locks from freezing, squirt an approved de-icer fluid or glycerine into the key opening. If a lock is covered with ice, squirt it with an approved de-icing fluid to remove the ice. If the lock is frozen internally, you may be able to thaw it out by using a heated key. Handle the heated key with care to avoid injury.

Do not let your parking brake freeze
Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. If there is a risk the parking brake may freeze, apply it only temporarily while you put the gear selector lever in P and block the rear wheels so the car cannot roll. Then release the parking brake.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze in system
To keep the water in the window washer system from freezing, add an approved window washer anti-freeze solution in accordance with instructions on the container. Window washer anti-freeze is available from an authorized EQUUS dealer and most auto parts outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze as these may damage the paint finish.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath
Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in severe winter conditions where this may happen, you should periodically check underneath the car to be sure the movement of the front wheels and the steering components is not obstructed.

Carry emergency equipment
Depending on the severity of the weather where you drive your car, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tire chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.
VEHICLE LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle capacity weight:
5 seater
904 lbs. (410 kg)
4 seater
754 lbs. (342 kg)

Vehicle capacity weight is the maximum combined weight of occupants and cargo.

The label located on the driver's door sill gives the original tire size, cold tire pressures recommended for your vehicle, the number of people that can be in your vehicle and vehicle capacity weight.
**Seating capacity:**

5 seater
- Total: 5 persons
  - (Front seat: 2 persons, Rear seat: 3 persons)

4 seater
- Total: 4 persons
  - (Front seat: 2 persons, Rear seat: 2 persons)

Seating capacity is the maximum number of occupants including a driver, your vehicle may carry. However, the seating capacity may be reduced based upon the weight of all of the occupants, and the weight of the cargo being carried.

Do not overload the vehicle as there is a limit to the total weight, or load limit including occupants and cargo, the vehicle can carry.

**Towing capacity:**

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.

**Cargo capacity:**

The cargo capacity of your vehicle will increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

**Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit -**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

∗ NOTICE

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.
Driving your vehicle

5 seater

Example 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Vehicle Capacity Weight</td>
<td>904 lbs (410 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Subtract Occupant Weight</td>
<td>300 lbs (136 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available Cargo and Luggage weight</td>
<td>604 lbs (274 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Vehicle Capacity Weight</td>
<td>904 lbs (410 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Subtract Occupant Weight</td>
<td>750 lbs (340 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available Cargo and Luggage weight</td>
<td>154 lbs (70 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Vehicle Capacity Weight</td>
<td>904 lbs (410 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Subtract Occupant Weight</td>
<td>860 lbs (390 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available Cargo and Luggage weight</td>
<td>44 lbs (20 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Refer to your vehicle’s tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.
Driving your vehicle

Refer to your vehicle’s tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle’s capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle’s capacity weight.

### Example 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Vehicle Capacity</td>
<td>754 lbs (342 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Subtract Occupant Weight</td>
<td>300 lbs (136 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available Cargo and Luggage weight</td>
<td>454 lbs (206 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example 2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Vehicle Capacity</td>
<td>754 lbs (342 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Subtract Occupant Weight</td>
<td>600 lbs (272 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available Cargo and Luggage weight</td>
<td>154 lbs (70 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Example 3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Vehicle Capacity</td>
<td>754 lbs (342 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Subtract Occupant Weight</td>
<td>688 lbs (312 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available Cargo and Luggage weight</td>
<td>66 lbs (30 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving your vehicle

Certification label

The certification label is located on the driver's door sill at the center pillar.
This label shows the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle. This is called the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo.
This label also tells you the maximum weight that can be supported by the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

⚠️ WARNING - Overloading

- Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, the GAWR for either the front or rear axle and vehicle capacity weight. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (or people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

(Continued)

- Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR, either the maximum front or rear GAWR and vehicle capacity weight. If you do, parts, including tires on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles and braking ability. This could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your vehicle can carry.

If you carry items inside your vehicle - like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else - they are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items will keep going and can cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.
**WARNING**

- Overloading your vehicle can cause heat buildup in your vehicle's tires and possible tire failure that could lead to a crash.
- Overloading your vehicle can cause increased stopping distances that could lead to a crash.
- A crash resulting from poor handling, vehicle damage, tire failure, or increased stopping distances could result in serious injury or death.

**CAUTION**

- Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.
- Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

**WARNING - Loose cargo**

Items you carry inside your vehicle can strike and injure occupants in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put items in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack items, like suitcases, inside the vehicle above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.
- When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it.
VEHICLE WEIGHT
This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of the vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle’s weight ratings, from the vehicle’s specifications and the certification label:

Base curb weight
This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle curb weight
This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo weight
This figure includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross axle weight)
This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross axle weight rating)
This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the certification label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross vehicle weight)
This is the Base Curb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross vehicle weight rating)
This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the certification label located on the driver’s door sill.
TRAILER TOWING

We do not recommend using this vehicle for trailer towing.
What to do in an emergency

Road warning ............................................. 6-2
  • Hazard warning flasher ..................................... 6-2

In case of an emergency while driving ............... 6-3
  • If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing .......... 6-3
  • If you have a flat tire while driving .................... 6-3
  • If engine stalls while driving ................................ 6-3

If the engine will not start .......................... 6-4
  • If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly ...... 6-4
  • If engine turns over normally but does not start ...... 6-4

Emergency starting .................................... 6-5
  • Jump starting ............................................. 6-5
  • Push-starting .............................................. 6-6

If the engine overheats ............................... 6-7

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ........ 6-9
  • Low tire pressure telltale .............................. 6-10
  • Low tire pressure position telltale ..................... 6-10
  • TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System)
    malfunction indicator ..................................... 6-11
  • Changing a tire with TPMS ............................ 6-12

If you have a flat tire ................................. 6-15
  • Jack and tools ........................................... 6-15
  • Removing and storing the spare tire ................... 6-16
  • Changing tires ......................................... 6-16

Towing ....................................................... 6-23
  • Towing service ............................................ 6-23
  • Removable towing hook .................................. 6-25
  • Emergency towing ....................................... 6-26
ROAD WARNING

Hazard warning flasher

The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

Depress the flasher switch with the ignition switch in any position. The flasher switch is located in the center console switch panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.
- Care must be taken when using the hazard warning flasher while the vehicle is being towed.
What to do in an emergency

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILE DRIVING

If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing, set the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe place.

If you have a flat tire while driving
If a tire goes flat while you are driving:
1. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the car slow down while driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause a loss of control. When the car has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
2. When the car is stopped, turn on your emergency hazard flashers, set the parking brake and put the shift lever in P.
3. Have all passengers get out of the car. Be sure they all get out on the side of the car that is away from traffic.
4. When changing a flat tire, follow the instruction provided later in this section.

If engine stalls while driving
1. Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
2. Turn on your emergency flashers.
3. Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, contact an authorized EQUUS dealer or seek other qualified assistance.
What to do in an emergency

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly
1. Be sure the shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park) and the emergency brake is set.
2. Check the battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
3. Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery is discharged.
4. Check the starter connections to be sure they are securely tightened.
5. Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. See instructions for "Jump starting".

WARNING
If the engine will not start, do not push or pull the car to start it. This could result in a collision or cause other damage.

If engine turns over normally but does not start
1. Check fuel level.
2. With the Engine Start/Stop Button in the OFF position, check all connectors at ignition coils and spark plugs. Reconnect any that may be disconnected or loose.
3. If the engine still does not start, call an authorized EQUUS dealer or seek other qualified assistance.
**EMERGENCY STARTING**

**Jump starting**

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Therefore, to avoid harm to yourself or damage to your vehicle or battery, follow the jump starting procedures. If in doubt, we strongly recommend that you have a competent technician or towing service jump start your vehicle.

**NOTICE**

Your vehicle has a battery in the trunk compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the engine compartment.

**CAUTION**

* Use only a 12-volt jumper system. You can damage a 12-volt starting motor, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair by use of a 24-volt power supply (either two 12-volt batteries in series or a 24-volt motor generator set).

**WARNING - Battery**

- Keep all flames or sparks away from the battery. The battery produces hydrogen gas which may explode if exposed to flame or sparks. If these instructions are not followed exactly, serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle may occur! If you are not sure how to follow this procedure, seek qualified assistance. Automobile batteries contain sulfuric acid. This is poisonous and highly corrosive. When jump starting, wear protective glasses and be careful not to get acid on yourself, your clothing or on the car.
- Do not attempt to jump start the vehicle if the discharged battery is frozen or if the electrolyte level is low; the battery may rupture or explode.

Connect cables in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.
What to do in an emergency

**Jump starting procedure**

*NOTICE*

Your vehicle has a battery in the trunk compartment, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the engine compartment.

1. Make sure the booster battery is 12-volt and that its negative terminal is grounded.
2. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, do not allow the vehicles to touch.
3. Turn off all unnecessary electrical loads.
4. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the jumper terminal (1), then connect the other end to the positive terminal on the booster battery (2). Proceed to connect one end of the other jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery (3), then the other end to the negative terminal of the jumper terminal (4).

Do not connect it to or near any part that moves when the engine is cranked.

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.

5. Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery and let it run at 2,000 rpm, then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
6. Let the discharged battery run for at least 20 minutes either by engine idling or by driving before you turn it off else the discharged battery may not be recharged enough to restart the car.

If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, you should have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Push-starting**

Vehicles equipped with automatic transmission cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this section for jump-starting.
What to do in an emergency

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine is probably too hot. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P and set the parking brake. If the air conditioning is on, turn it off.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the car or steam is coming out from the hood, stop the engine. Do not open the hood until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to be sure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.

4. Check to see if the water pump drive belt is missing. If it is not missing, check to see that it is tight. If the drive belt seems to be satisfactory, check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the car. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop.)

5. If the water pump drive belt is broken or engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and call the nearest authorized EQUUS dealer for assistance.

⚠️ WARNING

While the engine is running, keep hair, hands and clothing away from moving parts such as the fan and drive belts to prevent injury.

⚠️ WARNING

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns.
What to do in an emergency

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, carefully add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.

7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, call an authorized EQUUS dealer for assistance.

⚠️ CAUTION

Serious loss of coolant indicates there is a leak in the cooling system and this should be checked as soon as possible by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.
Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

✽ NOTICE
If any of the below happens, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
1. The low tire pressure telltale/TPMS malfunction indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or engine is running.
2. The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.
3. The Low tire pressure position telltale remains illuminated.

When the tire pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and warning massage displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. The low tire pressure position telltale light will indicate which tire is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding position light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible. Inflate the tires to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle’s placard or tire inflation pressure label located on the driver’s side center pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tire cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tire with the spare tire.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 15 mph (25 km/h) after replacing the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the below will happen:
• The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.

✽ NOTICE
The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure sensor.
What to do in an emergency

**CAUTION**

In winter or cold weather, the low tire pressure telltale may be illuminated if the tire pressure was adjusted to the recommended tire inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tire pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is greatly higher or lower, you should check the tire inflation pressure and adjust the tires to the recommended tire inflation pressure.

**WARNING - Low pressure damage**

Significantly low tire pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tires can cause the tires to overheat and fail.

**NOTICE**

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the low tire pressure position telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tire.

**TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator**

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

Have the system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible to determine the cause of the problem.
What to do in an emergency

⚠️ CAUTION
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the vehicle is moving around electric power supply cables or radio transmitter such as at police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, or transmitting towers, etc. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated if the snow chains are used or some separate electronic devices such as notebook computer, mobile charger, remote starter or navigation etc., are used in the vehicle. This can interfere with normal operation of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

Changing a tire with TPMS
If you have a flat tire, the Low Tire Pressure and Position telltales will come on. Have the flat tire repaired by an authorized EQUUS dealer as soon as possible or replace the flat tire with the spare tire.

⚠️ CAUTION
Never use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by EQUUS dealer to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tire. Tire sealant not approved by EQUUS dealer may damage the tire pressure sensor.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

If you drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes at speeds above 15 mph (25 km/h) after replacing the low pressure tire with the spare tire, the below will happen:
- The TPMS malfunction indicator may blink for approximately 1 minute and then remain continuously illuminated because the TPMS sensor is not mounted on the spare wheel.
You may not be able to identify a tire with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tire pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tire that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tire that is cold. A cold tire means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1 mile (1.6 km) in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tire to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tire is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

⚠️ WARNING - TPMS
- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tire damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

⚠️ WARNING - Protecting TPMS
Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tire pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠️ CAUTION
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TIRE

Jack and tools

The jack, jack handle, and wheel lug nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment. Pull up the luggage box cover to reach this equipment.

(1) Jack handle
(2) Jack
(3) Wheel lug nut wrench

Jacking instructions

The jack is provided for emergency tire changing only.

To prevent the jack from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store it properly.

Follow jacking instructions to reduce the possibility of personal injury.

WARNING - Changing tires

• Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.
• Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the shoulder before trying to change a tire. The jack should be used on level firm ground. If you cannot find a firm, level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.

(Continued)

• Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jack support.
• The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported only by a jack; use vehicle support stands.
• Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is on the jack.
• Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle while it is on the jack.
• Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.
Removing and storing the spare tire

Turn the tire hold-down wing bolt counterclockwise.
Store the tire in the reverse order of removal.
To prevent the spare tire and tools from “rattling” while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

⚠️ CAUTION
When you remove or store the spare tire, do not contact or bump the battery with the spare tire. Contacting or bumping the battery may cause failure of electrical circuits.

Changing tires

1. Park on a level surface and apply the parking brake firmly.
2. Shift the shift lever into P (Park).
3. Activate the hazard warning flasher.
4. Remove the wheel lug nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tire from the vehicle.

5. Block both the front and rear of the wheel that is diagonally opposite the jack position.

**WARNING - Changing a tire**

- To prevent vehicle movement while changing a tire, always set the parking brake fully, and always block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed.
- We recommend that the wheels of the vehicle be blocked, and that no person remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

6. Loosen the wheel lug nuts counterclockwise one turn each in sequence of number, but do not remove any nut until the tire has been raised off the ground.
What to do in an emergency

7. Place the jack at the front or rear jacking position closest to the tire you are changing. Place the jack at the designated locations under the frame. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two tabs and a raised dot to index with the jack.

**WARNING - Jack location**
To reduce the possibility of injury, be sure to use only the jack provided with the vehicle and in the correct jack position; never use any other part of the vehicle for jack support.

**CAUTION**
Place the jack not to damage to the plastic guard. If you place the jack at the plastic guard and jack up the vehicle, the plastic guard may be damaged.

8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tire just clears the ground. This measurement is approximately 30 mm (1.2 in). Before removing the wheel lug nuts, make sure the vehicle is stable and that there is no chance for movement or slippage.
9. Loosen the wheel nuts and remove them with your fingers. Slide the wheel off the studs and lay it flat so it cannot roll away. To put the wheel on the hub, pick up the spare tire, line up the holes with the studs and slide the wheel onto them. If this is difficult, tip the wheel slightly and get the top hole in the wheel lined up with the top stud. Then jiggle the wheel back and forth until the wheel can be slid over the other studs.

**WARNING**

Wheels may have sharp edges. Handle them carefully to avoid possible severe injury. Before putting the wheel into place, be sure that there is nothing on the hub or wheel (such as mud, tar, gravel, etc.) that prevents the wheel from fitting solidly against the hub. If there is, remove it. If there is not good contact on the mounting surface between the wheel and hub, the wheel nuts could come loose and cause the loss of a wheel. Loss of a wheel may result in loss of control of the vehicle. This may cause serious injury or death.

10. To reinstall the wheel, hold it on the studs, put the wheel nuts on the studs and tighten them finger tight. The nuts should be installed with their tapered small diameter ends directed inward. Jiggle the tire to be sure it is completely seated, then tighten the nuts as much as possible with your fingers again.

11. Lower the car to the ground by turning the wheel nut wrench counterclockwise.
Then position the wrench as shown in the drawing and tighten the wheel nuts. Be sure the socket is seated completely over the nut. Do not stand on the wrench handle or use an extension pipe over the wrench handle. Go around the wheel tightening every other nut until they are all tight. Then double-check each nut for tightness. After changing wheels, have an authorized EQUUS dealer tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible.

**Wheel nut tightening torque:**
Steel wheel & aluminum alloy wheel:
65–79 lb·ft (9–11 kg·m)

---

**CAUTION**

Your vehicle has metric threads on the wheel studs and nuts. Make certain during wheel removal that the same nuts that were removed are reinstalled - or, if replaced, that nuts with metric threads and the same chamfer configuration are used. Installation of a non-metric thread nut on a metric stud or vice-versa will not secure the wheel to the hub properly and will damage the stud so that it must be replaced.

Note that most lug nuts do not have metric threads. Be sure to use extreme care in checking for thread style before installing aftermarket lug nuts or wheels. If in doubt, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.
What to do in an emergency

To prevent the jack, jack handle, wheel lug nut wrench and spare tire from rattling while the vehicle is in motion, store them properly.

**WARNING - Wheel studs**
If the studs are damaged, they may lose their ability to retain the wheel. This could lead to the loss of the wheel and a collision resulting in serious injuries.

**Important - use of compact spare tire**
Your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare tire. This compact spare tire takes up less space than a regular-size tire. This tire is smaller than a conventional tire and is designed for temporary use only.

**WARNING - Inadequate spare tire pressure**
Check the inflation pressures as soon as possible after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, if necessary. Refer to “Tires and wheels” section 8.

**CAUTION**
- You should drive carefully when the compact spare is in use. The compact spare should be replaced by the proper conventional tire and rim at the first opportunity.
- The operation of this vehicle is not recommended with more than one compact spare tire in use at the same time.

**WARNING**
The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at speeds over 50 mph (80 km/h). The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as is possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

**NOTICE**
Check the inflation pressure after installing the spare tire. Adjust it to the specified pressure, as necessary.

The compact spare should be inflated to 60 psi (420 kPa).
When using a compact spare tire, observe the following precautions:

- Under no circumstances should you exceed 50 mph (80 km/h); a higher speed could damage the tire.
- Ensure that you drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards. Any road hazard, such as a pothole or debris, could seriously damage the compact spare.
- Any continuous road use of this tire could result in tire failure, loss of vehicle control, and possible personal injury.
- Do not exceed the vehicle’s maximum load rating or the load-carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tire.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tire diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tire and reduces the ground clearance approximately 1 inch (25 mm), which could result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash while the compact spare tire is installed.
- Do not use tire chains on the compact spare tire. Because of the smaller size, a tire chain will not fit properly. This could damage the vehicle and result in loss of the chain.
- Do not use the compact spare tire on any other vehicle because this tire has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tire’s tread life is shorter than a regular tire. Inspect your compact spare tire regularly and replace worn compact spare tires with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- The compact spare tire should not be used on any other wheels, nor should standard tires, snow tires, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel. If such use is attempted, damage to these items or other car components may occur.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer while the compact spare tire is installed.

⚠️ CAUTION
When the original tire and wheel are repaired and reinstalled on the vehicle, the wheel nut torque must be set correctly to prevent wheel vibration. The correct wheel nut tightening torque is 65~79lb-ft (9~11kg.m).
If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorized EQUUS dealer or a commercial tow-truck service. Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

It is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.

✽ NOTICE
When you tow the vehicle as the picture (A), the cable should be secured to the vehicle towing hook (1) as the picture.

If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angle (2) must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.
When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies:
1. Set the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ACC position.
2. Place the shift lever in N (Neutral).
3. Release the parking brake.

**CAUTION**

- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.

**CAUTION**

- Failure to place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

**CAUTION**

If the ECS malfunction indicator illuminates when there is no air in the suspension, the vehicle height will be very low, so do not drive the vehicle to protect it from projections on the ground. Take your vehicle to an authorized EQUUS dealer by towing the vehicle and have the system checked. You should tow the vehicle as shown in the picture.
What to do in an emergency

When you load the vehicle onto the tow truck, the loading angle(1) should be smaller than 6°.

Removable towing hook (if equipped)

1. Open the trunk, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.
2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the lower part of the cover on the front or rear bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.
What to do in an emergency

Emergency towing

If towing is necessary, we recommend you to have it done by an authorized EQUUS dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook under the front (or rear) of the vehicle. Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

- Do not use the tow hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Avoid towing a vehicle heavier than the vehicle doing the towing.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.

**⚠️ CAUTION**
- Attach a towing strap to the tow hook.
- Using a portion of the vehicle other than the tow hooks for towing may damage the body of your vehicle.
- Use only a cable or chain specifically intended for use in towing vehicles. Securely fasten the cable or chain to the towing hook provided.
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.
- To avoid damaging the hook, do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle. Always pull straight ahead.
What to do in an emergency

⚠️ WARNING
Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
- Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would place excessive stress on the emergency towing hook and towing cable or chain. The hook and towing cable or chain may break and cause serious injury or damage.
- If the disabled vehicle cannot be moved, do not forcibly continue the towing. Contact an authorized EQUUS dealer or a commercial tow truck service for assistance.
- Tow the vehicle as straight ahead as possible.
- Keep away from the vehicle during towing.

Emergency towing precautions
- Place the transmission shift lever in N (Neutral).
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal since you will have reduced brake performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- If you are driving down a long hill, the brakes may overheat and brake performance will be reduced. Stop often and let the brakes cool off.

☆ NOTICE
Emergency towing is not legal in all states. Contact an authorized EQUUS dealer and tow the vehicle.
What to do in an emergency

⚠️ CAUTION - Automatic transmission

- If the car is being towed with all four wheels on the ground, it can be towed only from the front. Be sure that the transmission is in neutral. Be sure the steering is unlocked by placing the Engine Start/Stop Button in the ACC position. A driver must be in the towed vehicle to operate the steering and brakes.

- To avoid serious damage to the automatic transmission, limit the vehicle speed to 10 mph (15 km/h) and drive less than 1 mile (1.5 km) when towing.

- Before towing, check the automatic transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.
## Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine compartment</td>
<td>7-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance services</td>
<td>7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Owner’s responsibility</td>
<td>7-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Owner maintenance precautions</td>
<td>7-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owner maintenance</td>
<td>7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Owner maintenance schedule</td>
<td>7-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduled maintenance service</td>
<td>7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Normal maintenance schedule</td>
<td>7-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Maintenance under severe usage conditions</td>
<td>7-19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explanation of scheduled maintenance items</td>
<td>7-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil</td>
<td>7-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking the engine oil level</td>
<td>7-23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Changing the engine oil and filter</td>
<td>7-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine coolant</td>
<td>7-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking the coolant level</td>
<td>7-25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Changing the coolant</td>
<td>7-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>7-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking the brake fluid level</td>
<td>7-28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>7-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking the power steering fluid level</td>
<td>7-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking the power steering hose</td>
<td>7-29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washer fluid</td>
<td>7-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking the washer fluid level</td>
<td>7-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air cleaner</td>
<td>7-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Filter replacement</td>
<td>7-31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Climate control air filter</td>
<td>7-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Filter inspection</td>
<td>7-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Filter replacement</td>
<td>7-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wiper blades</td>
<td>7-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Blade inspection</td>
<td>7-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Blade replacement</td>
<td>7-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery</td>
<td>7-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• For best battery service</td>
<td>7-40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Battery recharging by battery charger</td>
<td>7-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Battery recharging by vehicle</td>
<td>7-42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reset items</td>
<td>7-43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tires and wheels</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tire care</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Recommended cold tire inflation pressures</td>
<td>7-44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Checking tire inflation pressure</td>
<td>7-45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tire rotation</td>
<td>7-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Wheel alignment and tire balance</td>
<td>7-47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tire replacement</td>
<td>7-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Wheel replacement</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tire traction</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tire maintenance</td>
<td>7-49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tire sidewall labeling</td>
<td>7-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Low aspect ratio tire</td>
<td>7-54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire terminology and definitions</td>
<td>7-55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All season tires</td>
<td>7-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summer tires</td>
<td>7-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snow tires</td>
<td>7-57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tire chains</td>
<td>7-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radial-ply tires</td>
<td>7-58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuses</td>
<td>7-59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner panel fuse replacement</td>
<td>7-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine compartment fuse replacement</td>
<td>7-62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse/relay panel description</td>
<td>7-63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light bulbs</td>
<td>7-74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlight, position light, turn signal light, side marker light and front fog light bulb replacement</td>
<td>7-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side repeater light bulb replacement</td>
<td>7-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear combination light bulb replacement</td>
<td>7-81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High mounted stop light</td>
<td>7-82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License plate lamp replacement</td>
<td>7-87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior light bulb replacement</td>
<td>7-90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appearance care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exterior care</td>
<td>7-92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interior care</td>
<td>7-97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emission control system</td>
<td>7-99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crankcase emission control system</td>
<td>7-99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Evaporative emission control system</td>
<td>7-99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exhaust emission control system</td>
<td>7-100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California perchlorate notice</td>
<td>7-103</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Radiator cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Engine oil filler cap
7. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box
9. Power steering fluid reservoir
10. Jumper terminal

★ The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
★ The battery is in the trunk.
MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

Should you have any doubts concerning the inspection or servicing of your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have an authorized EQUUS dealer perform this work.

An authorized EQUUS dealer has factory-trained technicians and genuine HYUNDAI parts to service your vehicle properly. For expert advice and quality service, see an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury.

Owner’s responsibility

NOTICE

Maintenance Service and Record Retention are the owner’s responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Owner’s Handbook & Warranty Information booklet.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

An authorized EQUUS dealer meets HYUNDAI’s high service quality standards and receives technical support from HYUNDAI in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.
Owner maintenance precautions
Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.
As explained earlier in this section, several procedures can be done only by an authorized EQUUS dealer with special tools.

* NOTICE
Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Owner’s Handbook & Warranty Information booklet provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ WARNING - Maintenance work
• Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, have it done by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
• Working under the hood with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewelry or loose clothing. These can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.

(Continued)
Therefore, if you must run the engine while working under the hood, make certain that you remove all jewelry (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fans.
OWNERS MAINTENANCE

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorized EQUUS dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance Checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labor, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check coolant level in coolant reservoir.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level.
- Look for low or under-inflated tires.

When operating your vehicle:
- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when traveling on smooth, level road.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check automatic transmission P (Park) function.
- Check parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure. This could cause burns or other serious injury.
At least monthly:
- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tires including the spare.

At least twice a year (i.e., every Spring and Fall):
- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windshield washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlight alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the lap/shoulder belts for wear and function.
- Check for worn tires and loose wheel lug nuts.

At least once a year:
- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and checks, and hood hinges.
- Lubricate door and hood locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weatherstrips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Check the power steering fluid level.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.
SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICE

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, follow Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeated short distance driving.
- Driving in dusty conditions or sandy areas.
- Extensive use of brakes.
- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used.
- Driving on rough or muddy roads.
- Driving in mountainous areas.
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation.
- Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures and/or extremely humid climates.
- More than 50% driving in heavy city traffic during hot weather above 90°F (32°C).

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After 120 months or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.
**NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE**

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good emission control and performance.
Keep receipts for all vehicle emission services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 6 months</th>
<th>22,500 miles (36,000 km) or 18 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months)</td>
<td>(22,500 miles (36,000 km) or 36 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7,500 miles (12,000 km) or 12 months)</td>
<td>(15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months</th>
<th>15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter (15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter (15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1 (15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1 (15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
### NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months</th>
<th>37,500 miles (60,000 km) or 30 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
<td>❑ Inspect rear differential oil *3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
<td>(40,000 miles (64,000 km) or 48 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
<td>(37,500 miles (60,000 km) or 60 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
<td>(37,500 miles (60,000 km) or 60 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel filter *2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter *2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect parking brake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap, fuel tank</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace air cleaner filter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter (30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 48 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1 (30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 48 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear differential oil *3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(40,000 miles (64,000 km) or 48 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(37,500 miles (60,000 km) or 60 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*2 : Fuel filter & Fuel tank air filter are considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorized EQUUS dealer for details.

*3 : Rear differential oil should be changed anytime rear differential have been submerged in water.

※ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 36 months</th>
<th>52,500 miles (84,000 km) or 42 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
<td>(52,500 miles (84,000 km) or 84 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
<td>(52,500 miles (84,000 km) or 84 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
<td>(45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 72 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(45,000 miles (72,000 km) or 72 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.  
* Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
### NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 48 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel filter *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap, fuel tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses | *(Continued)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>67,500 miles (108,000 km) or 54 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>67,500 miles (108,000 km) or 54 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*2 : Fuel filter & Fuel tank air filter are considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorized EQUUS dealer for details.

*4 : The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

*Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>75,000 miles (120,000 km) or 60 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect propeller shaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)*4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect rear differential oil*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(80,000 miles (128,000 km) or 96 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)

| Rotate tires                           |
| Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit) |
| Replace engine oil and filter          |
| (75,000 miles (120,000 km) or 120 months) |
| Add fuel additives *1                  |
| (75,000 miles (120,000 km) or 120 months) |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82,500 miles (132,000 km) or 66 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(82,500 miles (132,000 km) or 132 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(82,500 miles (132,000 km) or 132 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)

| Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit) |
| Replace engine oil and filter |
| (75,000 miles (120,000 km) or 120 months) |
| Add fuel additives *1 |
| (75,000 miles (120,000 km) or 120 months) |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>82,500 miles (132,000 km) or 66 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(82,500 miles (132,000 km) or 132 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(82,500 miles (132,000 km) or 132 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*2: Rear differential oil should be changed anytime rear differential have been submerged in water.

*3: The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

*4: Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

### 90,000 miles (144,000 km) or 72 months

- Rotate tires
- Inspect vacuum hose
- Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
- Inspect brake hoses and lines
- Inspect drive shafts and boots
- Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
- Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
- Inspect propeller shaft
- Inspect rear brake disc/pads
- Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
- Inspect suspension mounting bolts
- Inspect brake fluid
- Inspect fuel filter
- Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
- Inspect fuel tank air filter
- Inspect parking brake
- Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap, fuel tank
- Inspect drive belts
  - (First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)
- Inspect power steering fluid
- Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses

### 97,500 miles (156,000 km) or 78 months

- Rotate tires
- Inspect air cleaner filter
- Inspect vacuum hose
- Inspect power steering fluid
- Replace engine oil and filter
  - (97,500 miles (156,000 km) or 156 months)
- Add fuel additives
  - (97,500 miles (156,000 km) or 156 months)

### 147,500 miles (236,000 km) or 114 months

- Rotate tires
- Inspect air conditioning refrigerant
- Inspect vacuum hose
- Inspect brake hoses and lines
- Inspect drive shafts and boots
- Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler
- Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers
- Inspect propeller shaft
- Inspect rear brake disc/pads
- Inspect steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint
- Inspect suspension mounting bolts
- Inspect brake fluid
- Inspect fuel filter
- Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections
- Inspect fuel tank air filter
- Inspect parking brake
- Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap, fuel tank
- Inspect drive belts
  - (First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)
- Inspect power steering fluid
- Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses
- Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)
- Replace air cleaner filter
- Replace engine oil and filter
  - (147,500 miles (236,000 km) or 252 months)
- Add fuel additives
  - (147,500 miles (236,000 km) or 252 months)

---

*1: If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*2: Fuel filter & Fuel tank air filter are considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorized EQUUS dealer for details.

*4: The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

Inspect: Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
### NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 84 months</th>
<th>112,500 miles (180,000 km) or 90 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
<td>(112,500 miles (180,000 km) or 180 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
<td>(112,500 miles (180,000 km) or 180 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months) **4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace spark plugs (iridium coated)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 168 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(105,000 miles (168,000 km) or 168 months)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

**4 : The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

★ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
### NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 96 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect propeller shaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect brake fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect fuel filter *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect fuel tank air filter *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap, fuel tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)**4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect rear differential oil *3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 144 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 192 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace coolant (First, 120,000 miles (210,000 km) or 120 months after every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add fuel additives *1 (120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 192 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>127,500 miles (204,000 km) or 102 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(127,500 miles (204,000 km) or 204 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add fuel additives *1 (127,500 miles (204,000 km) or 204 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*2 : Fuel filter & Fuel tank air filter are considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorized EQUUS dealer for details.

*3 : Rear differential oil should be changed anytime rear differential have been submerged in water.

*4 : The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

* Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
### NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>135,000 miles (216,000 km) or 108 months</th>
<th>142,500 miles (228,000 km) or 114 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
<td>❑ Inspect air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)*4</td>
<td>(First, 135,000 miles (216,000 km) or 216 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS (Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump and hoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(135,000 miles (216,000 km) or 216 months)</td>
<td>(142,500 miles (228,000 km) or 228 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*4: The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

+ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
## NORMAL MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE (CONT.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>150,000 miles (240,000 km) or 120 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Rotate tires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vacuum hose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect air conditioning refrigerant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake hoses and lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive shafts and boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect exhaust pipe and muffler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect front brake disc/pads, calipers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect propeller shaft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear brake disc/pads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect steering gear box, linkage &amp; boots/lower arm ball joint, upper arm ball joint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect suspension mounting bolts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect brake fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel filter *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect fuel tank air filter *2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect parking brake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect vapor hose and fuel filler cap, fuel tank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect power steering fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect EHPS(Electronic Hydraulic Power Steering) motor pump, belt and hoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect rear differential oil *3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(160,000 miles (256,000 km) or 192 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Inspect drive belts (First, 60,000 miles (96,000 km) or 72 months after every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 24 months)*4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>150,000 miles (240,000 km) or 240 months</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace climate control air filter (for evaporator and blower unit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace air cleaner filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace engine oil and filter (150,000 miles (240,000 km) or 240 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Replace coolant (First, 120,000 miles (192,000 km) or 120 months after every 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>❑ Add fuel additives *1 (150,000 miles (240,000 km) or 240 months)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### No check, No service required

| ❑ Automatic transmission fluid *5 |

---

*1 : If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorized EQUUS dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*2 : Fuel filter & Fuel tank air filter are considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depends on fuel quality. If there are some important safety matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, hard starting problem etc, replace the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consult an authorized EQUUS dealer for details.

*3 : Rear differential oil should be changed anytime rear differential have been submerged in water.

*4 : The drive belt should be replaced when cracks occur or tension is reduced excessively.

*5 : Use only the specified automatic transmission fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants and capacities" in section 8 or the label in the engine room.)

♀ Inspect : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
MAINTENANCE UNDER SEVERE USAGE CONDITIONS

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars normally used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace  I : Inspect and, after inspection, clean, adjust, repair or replace if necessary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAINTENANCE ITEM</th>
<th>MAINTENANCE OPERATION</th>
<th>MAINTENANCE INTERVALS</th>
<th>DRIVING CONDITION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENGINE OIL AND FILTER</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>EVERY 3,750 MILES (6,000 KM) OR 6 MONTHS</td>
<td>A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIR CLEANER FILTER</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>C, E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPARK PLUGS</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>A, B, H, I, K</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>EVERY 60,000 MILES (96,000 KM)</td>
<td>A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRONT BRAKE DISC/PADS, CALIPERS</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>C, D, G, H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAR BRAKE DISC /PADS</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>C, D, G, H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PARKING BRAKE</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>C, D, G, H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEERING GEAR BOX, LINKAGE &amp; BOOTS/</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>C, D, E, F, G, H, I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOWER ARM BALL JOINT, UPPER ARM BALL JOINT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRIVE SHAFTS AND BOOTS</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>EVERY 7,500 MILES (12,000 KM) OR 6 MONTHS</td>
<td>C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REAR DIFFERENTIAL OIL</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>EVERY 80,000 MILES (128,000 KM)</td>
<td>C, G, H, I, J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>MORE FREQUENTLY</td>
<td>C, E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(FOR EVAPORATOR AND BLOWER UNIT)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROPELLER SHAFT</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>EVERY 7,500 MILES (12,000 KM) OR 6 MONTHS</td>
<td>C, E</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SEVERE DRIVING CONDITIONS

A - Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 5 miles (8 km) in normal temperature or less than 10 miles (16 km) in freezing temperature
B - Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
C - Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, gravelled or salt-spread roads
D - Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
E - Driving in sandy areas
F - Driving in heavy traffic area over 90°F (32°C)
G - Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain road
H - Towing a Trailer, or using a camper, or roof rack
I - Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
J - Driving over 106 mph (170 km/h)
K - Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions
EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

**Engine oil and filter**

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the car is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

**Drive belts**

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary.

**Fuel filter**

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting. If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. Fuel filters should be installed by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections**

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Have an authorized EQUUS dealer replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately.

**Vapor hose and fuel filler cap**

The vapor hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapor hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

**Air cleaner filter**

A Genuine HYUNDAI air cleaner filter is recommended when the filter is replaced.

**Spark plugs**

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.
Cooling system
Check cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant
The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transmission fluid
Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions. But in severe conditions, the fluid should be changed at an authorized EQUUS dealer in accordance to the scheduled maintenance at the beginning of this chapter.

NOTICE
Automatic transmission fluid color is basically red. As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker. This is normal condition and you should not judge the need to replace the fluid based upon the changed color.

⚠️ CAUTION
The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transmission malfunction and failure. Use only specified automatic transmission fluid. (Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in section 8.)
**Maintenance**

**Brake hoses and lines**
Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

**Brake fluid**
Check brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 3 or DOT 4 specification.

**Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors**
Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

**Exhaust pipe and muffler**
Visually inspect the exhaust pipes, muffler and hangers for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Start the engine and listen carefully for any exhaust gas leakage. Tighten connections or replace parts as necessary.

**Suspension mounting bolts**
Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

**Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint**
With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

**Power steering pump, belt and hoses**
Check the power steering pump and hoses for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged or leaking parts immediately. Inspect the power steering belt (or drive belt) for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear, oiliness and proper tension. Replace or adjust it if necessary.

**Drive shafts and boots**
Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

**Air conditioning refrigerant**
Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.
ENGINE OIL

Checking the engine oil level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
3. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
4. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.
5. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F and L.

**WARNING - Radiator hose**
Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding the engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

**CAUTION**
- Do not overfill with engine oil. Engine damage may result.
- Do not spill engine oil when adding or changing engine oil. If you spill engine oil in the engine room, wipe it off immediately.

If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. Do not overfill.

Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components.

Use only the specified engine oil. (Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in section 8.)
Changing the engine oil and filter

Have engine oil and filter changed by an authorized EQUUS dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this section.

⚠️ CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING

Engine oil contains chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects and reproductive harm. Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.
ENGINE COOLANT
The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.
Check the antifreeze protection and coolant level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before traveling to a colder climate.

Checking the coolant level

WARNING
Removing radiator cap

- Never attempt to remove the radiator cap while the engine is operating or hot. Doing so might lead to cooling system and engine damage and could result in serious personal injury from escaping hot coolant or steam.
- Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it counterclockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back while the pressure is released from the cooling system.

(Continued)

(Continued)
When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning counterclockwise to remove it.
- Even if the engine is not operating, do not remove the radiator cap or the drain plug while the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may still blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.
**WARNING**

The electric motor (cooling fan) is controlled by engine coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. It may sometimes operate even when the engine is not running. Use extreme caution when working near the blades of the cooling fan so that you are not injured by a rotating fan blades. As the engine coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

If your vehicle is equipped with GDI, the electric motor (cooling fan) may operate until you disconnect the negative battery cable.

Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F and L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionized) water. Bring the level to F, but do not overfill. If frequent additions are required, see an authorized EQUUS dealer for a cooling system inspection.

---

**Recommended engine coolant**

- When adding coolant, use only deionized water, distilled water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.

- The engine in your vehicle has aluminum engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol-based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.

- **DO NOT USE** alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.

- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, which would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

- 50% water and 50% antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together as it will be same quantity of each and can work reasonable for most situations.
For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ambient Temperature</th>
<th>Mixture Percentage (volume)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Antifreeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5°F (-15°C)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-13°F (-25°C)</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-31°F (-35°C)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-49°F (-45°C)</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*S NOTICE

If in doubt about mix ratio 50% water and 50% antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together as it will be same quantity of each. It can work reasonable for most temperature range of -31°F and higher.

**WARNING**

Radiator cap

Do not remove the radiator cap when the engine and radiator are hot. Scalding hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.

**CAUTION**

Put a thick cloth around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant in order to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts such as the generator.

**WARNING - COOLANT**

- Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.
BRAKE FLUID

Checking the brake fluid level

Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated mileage. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, have the brake system checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Use only the specified brake fluid. (Refer to “Recommended lubricants or capacities” in section 8.)

Never mix different types of fluid.

WARNING - Brake fluid
When changing and adding brake fluid, handle it carefully. Do not let it come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid should come in contact with your eyes, immediately flush them with a large quantity of fresh tap water. Have your eyes examined by a doctor as soon as possible.

WARNING - Loss of brake fluid
In the event the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

CAUTION
Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle’s body paint, as paint damage will result. Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly. Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts.
POWER STEERING FLUID

Checking the power steering fluid level

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level in the power steering reservoir periodically. The fluid should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the gauge at the normal temperature.

Before adding power steering fluid, thoroughly clean the area around the reservoir cap to prevent power steering fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level.

In the event the power steering system requires frequent addition of fluid, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Use only the specified power steering fluid. (Refer to "Recommended lubricants or capacities" in section 8.)

CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the power steering pump, do not operate the vehicle for prolonged periods with a low power steering fluid level.
- Never start the engine when the reservoir tank is empty.
- When adding fluid, be careful that dirt does not get into the tank.
- Too little fluid can result in increased steering effort and/or noise from the power steering system.
- The use of the non-specified fluid could reduce the effectiveness of the power steering system and cause damage to it.

Checking the power steering hose

Check the connections for oil leaks, damage and twists in the power steering hose before driving.
WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level

The reservoir is translucent so that you can check the level with a quick visual inspection.

Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

**WARNING - Coolant**

- Do not use radiator coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.
- Radiator coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windshield and may cause loss of vehicle control or damage to paint and body trim.
- Windshield washer fluid agents contain some amounts of alcohol and can be flammable under certain circumstances. Do not allow sparks or flame to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Damage to the vehicle or occupants could occur.
- Windshield washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals. Do not drink and avoid contacting windshield washer fluid. Serious injury or death could occur.
AIR CLEANER
Filter replacement

It must be replaced when necessary, and should not be washed.
You can clean the filter when inspecting the air cleaner element.
Clean the filter by using compressed air.

Main air cleaner

1. Push the top of the fastener to remove the cover.

2. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.

3. Wipe the inside of the air cleaner.
4. Replace the air cleaner filter.
5. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.

**Chamber air cleaner**

1. Loosen the air cleaner cover attaching clips and open the cover.
2. Replace the air cleaner filter after pulling up the locking tab (1).
3. Lock the cover with the cover attaching clips.
Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

*If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals. (Refer to “Maintenance under severe usage conditions” in this section.)*

⚠️ **CAUTION**

- *Do not drive with the air cleaner removed; this will result in excessive engine wear.*
- *When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.*
- *Use a HYUNDAI genuine part. Use of non-genuine parts could damage the air flow sensor.*
Filter inspection

The climate control air filter should be replaced every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Filter replacement

1. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides to allow the glove box to hang freely on the hinges.

2. Remove the cylinder at the left of the glove box.
3. Remove the climate control air filter case pulling out both sides of the cover.

4. Replace the climate control air filter.

5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

*NOTICE*

When replacing the climate control air filter install it properly. Otherwise, the system may produce noise and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.
WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windshield or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

* NOTICE
Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windshield difficult to clean.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

⚠️ CAUTION
To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.

⚠️ CAUTION
The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.
**Front windshield wiper blade**

For your convenience, move the windshield wiper blades to the service position as follows;

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Move the wiper switch to the single wiping (MIST) position within 20 seconds and hold the switch until the wiper blade is in the fully up position.

**Type A**

1. Raise the wiper arm.

**CAUTION**

*Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.*

2. Open the cover of the blade. Press the clip behind the wiper arm and remove the blade assembly downward.
3. Install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
4. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
5. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
6. Move the wiper switch to any position and then to the OFF position.

**Type B**

1. Raise the wiper arm.

**CAUTION**

*Do not allow the wiper arm to fall against the windshield, since it may chip or crack the windshield.*

2. Turn the wiper blade clip. Then lift up the blade clip.
3. Push the clip (1) and push up the wiper arm (2).
4. Push down the wiper arm (3) and install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.

5. Return the wiper arm on the windshield.
BATTERY

For best battery service

The battery is in the trunk.

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.

⚠️ CAUTION

Make sure that the clear tube vent hose is connected between the nipple at the back side of the battery and the vehicle body vent nipple. This ensures that if battery vapors occur that they will exit the vehicle not remain in the trunk.

⚠️ WARNING - Battery dangers

Always read the following instructions carefully when handling a battery.

- Keep lighted cigarettes and all other flames or sparks away from the battery.
- Hydrogen, a highly combustible gas, is always present in battery cells and may explode if ignited.
- Keep batteries out of the reach of children because batteries contain highly corrosive SULFURIC ACID. Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint finish.

(Continued)
If any electrolyte gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If electrolyte gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the contacted area. If you feel a pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

Wear eye protection when charging or working near a battery. Always provide ventilation when working in an enclosed space.

An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING
Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash hands after handling.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak, resulting in personal injury. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Never attempt to recharge the battery when the battery cables are connected.

The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. Never touch these components with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Failure to follow the above warnings can result in serious bodily injury or death.
Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged in a short time (because, for example, the headlights or interior lights were left on while the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

**Battery recharging by vehicle**

After a jump start from a good battery, run the engine for 20-30 minutes at idle or driving the vehicle before it is shut off. Vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had chance to adequately recharge.

**CAUTION**

- When you don’t use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.
  
  The power trunk is not closed completely when the battery is removed. When you remove the battery from the vehicle, refer to "Power trunk" in section 4.
- Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case from being damaged in a low temperature area.
- If you connect unauthorized electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorized devices.

**WARNING**

Removing the battery from the vehicle should be done at an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**WARNING - Recharging battery**

When recharging the battery, observe the following precautions:

- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in an area with good ventilation.
- Do not allow cigarettes, sparks, or flame near the battery.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin gassing (boiling) violently or if the temperature of the electrolyte of any cell exceeds 120°F (49°C).
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- Disconnect the battery charger in the following order.  

(Continued)
(Continued)

1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

⚠️ WARNING
- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected.
- Operation related to the battery should be done at an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Keep the battery away from water or any liquid.
- The battery is in the trunk, so you should be careful when you load a container filled with liquid into the trunk.
- For your safety, use a genuine HYUNDAI approved battery when you replace the battery.

Reset items
Items should be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.
- Auto up/down window (See section 4)
- Sunroof (See section 4)
- Driver position memory system (See section 4)
- Trip computer (See section 4)
- Climate control system (See section 4)
- Clock (See DIS manual)
- Audio (See DIS manual)
- Power trunk (See section 4)
TIRES AND WHEELS

Tire care
For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tire inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.

Recommended cold tire inflation pressures
All tire pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tires are cold. “Cold Tires” means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than one mile (1.6 km).
Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tire wear.
For recommended inflation pressure, refer to “Tire and wheels” in section 8.

WARNING - Tire underinflation
Severe underinflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tire failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control leading to severe injury or death. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

CAUTION
• Underinflation also results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation also is possible. Keep your tire pressures at the proper levels. If a tire frequently needs refilling, have it checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
• Overinflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the center of the tire tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.
Maintenance

**CAUTION**
- Warm tires normally exceed recommended cold tire pressures by 4 to 6 psi (28 to 41 kPa). Do not release air from warm tires to adjust the pressure or the tires will be underinflated.
- Be sure to reinstall the tire inflation valve caps. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

**CAUTION - Tire pressure**

Always observe the following:
- Check tire pressure when the tires are cold. (After vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or hasn’t been driven more than one mile (1.6 km) since startup.)
- Check the pressure of your spare tire each time you check the pressure of other tires.
- Never overload your vehicle. Be careful not to overload a vehicle luggage rack if your vehicle is equipped with one.
- Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.

**WARNING - Tire Inflation**

Overinflation or underinflation can reduce tire life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tire failure. This could result in loss of vehicle control and potential injury.

**Checking tire inflation pressure**

Check your tires once a month or more.
Also, check the tire pressure of the spare tire.

**How to check**

Use a good quality gage to check tire pressure. You can not tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they’re underinflated.

Check the tire’s inflation pressure when the tires are cold. - "Cold" means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tire and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

**WARNING**
- Inspect your tires frequently for proper inflation as well as wear and damage. Always use a tire pressure gauge.
- Tires with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling, loss of vehicle control, and sudden tire failure leading to accidents, injuries, and even death. The recommended cold tire pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tire label located on the driver's side center pillar.
- Worn tires can cause accidents. Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Remember to check the pressure of your spare tire. HYUNDAI recommends that you check the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tires on your vehicle.

**Tire rotation**
To equalize tread wear, it is recommended that the tires be rotated every 7,500 miles (12,000 km) or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tires for correct balance.
When rotating tires, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tire pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions. Replace the tire if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tire pressures to specification and check lug nut tightness.
Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tires are rotated.

**NOTICE**
The front tire size is different from the rear tire size. So when you rotate tires, check the tire and wheel size.

**WARNING**
- Do not use the compact spare tire for tire rotation.
- Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tires under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that could result in death, severe injury, or property damage.

**Wheel alignment and tire balance**
The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

**CAUTION**
Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle’s aluminum wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.
Tire replacement

If the tire is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire. Replace the tire when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tire.

⚠️ WARNING - Replacing tires

To reduce the chance of serious or fatal injuries from an accident caused by tire failure or loss of vehicle control:

- Replace tires that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tires can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.
- Do not drive your vehicle with too little or too much pressure in your tires. This can lead to uneven wear and tire failure.
- When replacing tires, never mix radial and bias-ply tires on the same car. You must replace all tires (including the spare) if moving from radial to bias-ply tires.

(Continued)

(Continued)

- Using tires and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics and poor vehicle control, resulting in a serious accident.
- Wheels that do not meet HYUNDAI’s specifications may fit poorly and result in damage to the vehicle or unusual handling and poor vehicle control.
- The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. Tire size can affect wheel speed. When replacing tires, all 4 tires must use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can cause the ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) to work irregularly.
Compact spare tire replacement
A compact spare tire has a shorter tread life than a regular size tire. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tire. The replacement compact spare tire should be the same size and design tire as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tire wheel. The compact spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tire wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tire.

⚠️ WARNING
The compact spare tire is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle on this compact spare at speeds over 50 mph (80 km/h). The original tire should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare possibly leading to personal injury or death.

Wheel replacement
When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

✽ NOTICE
The front tire size is different from the rear tire size. So when you rotate tires, check the tire and wheel size.

⚠️ WARNING
A wheel that is not the correct size may adversely affect wheel and bearing life, braking and stopping abilities, handling characteristics, ground clearance, body-to-tire clearance, snow chain clearance, speedometer and odometer calibration, headlight aim and bumper height.

Tire traction
Tire traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tires, tires that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tires should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

Tire maintenance
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tire life. Additionally, a tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.
Tire sidewall labeling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides the tire identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tire in case of a recall.

1. Manufacturer or brand name
Manufacturer or Brand name is shown.

2. Tire size designation
A tire's sidewall is marked with a tire size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tires for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tire size designation mean.

Example tire size designation:
(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tire size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

P245/45R19 98V

P - Applicable vehicle type (tires marked with the prefix “P” are intended for use on passenger cars or light trucks; however, not all tires have this marking).

245 - Tire width in millimeters.

45 - Aspect ratio. The tire's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tire construction code (Radial).

19 - Rim diameter in inches.

98 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry.

V - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.
Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation: 8.0JX19

8.0 - Rim width in inches.
J - Rim contour designation.
19 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tire speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger car tires. The speed rating is part of the tire size designation on the sidewall of the tire. This symbol corresponds to that tire's designed maximum safe operating speed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speed Rating Symbol</th>
<th>Maximum Speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>112 mph (180 km/h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>118 mph (190 km/h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>130 mph (210 km/h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>149 mph (240 km/h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Z</td>
<td>Above 149 mph (240 km/h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Checking tire life (TIN : Tire Identification Number)

Any tires that are over 6 years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tire) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tire sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tire consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX OOOO

The front part of the DOT means a plant code number, tire size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1613 represents that the tire was produced in the 16th week of 2013.
4. **Tire ply composition and material**

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. **Maximum permissible inflation pressure**

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tire. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. **Maximum load rating**

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. When replacing the tires on the vehicle, always use a tire that has the same load rating as the factory installed tire.

7. **Uniform tire quality grading**

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: TREAD wear 200 TRACTION AA TEMPERATURE A
Tread wear
The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of
the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified govern-
ment test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one-and-a-
half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions
of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm
due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in
road characteristics and climate.
These grades are molded on the side-walls of passenger vehicle tires. The tires available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction perform-
ance.

WARNING
The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-
ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceler-
ation, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature -A, B & C
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tire’s resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.
Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.
Low aspect ratio tire (if equipped)

Low aspect ratio tires, whose aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks. Because the low aspect ratio tires are optimized for handling and braking, it may be more uncomfortable to ride in and there is more noise compared with normal tires.

WARNING - Tire temperature

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tire failure. This can cause loss of vehicle control and serious injury or death.

CAUTION

Because the sidewall of the low aspect ratio tire is shorter than the normal, the wheel and tire of the low aspect ratio tire is easier to be damaged. So, follow the instructions below.

- When driving on a rough road or off road, drive cautiously because tires and wheels may be damaged. And after driving, inspect tires and wheels.
- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or curb stone, drive slowly so that the tires and wheels are not damaged.

(Continued)

CAUTION

- If the tire is impacted, inspect the tire condition or contact an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- To prevent damage to the tire, inspect the tire condition and pressure every 1,800 miles (3,000 km).

- It is not easy to recognize the tire damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tire damage, even though you cannot see the tire damage with your own eyes, have the tire checked or replaced because the tire damage may cause air leakage from the tire.
- If the tire is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or curb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.
- You can find out the tire information on the tire sidewall.

(Continued)
Tire terminology and definitions

**Air Pressure:** The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascal (kPa).

**Accessory Weight:** This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio:** The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt:** A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead:** The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Tire Pressure:** The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving.

**Curb Weight:** This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings:** A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

**GVWR:** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

**GAWR FRT:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Front Axle.

**GAWR RR:** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the Rear axle.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall:** The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa):** The metric unit for air pressure.

**Load Index:** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure:** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating:** The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight:** The sum of curb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight:** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 pounds (68 kg).
**Occupant Distribution:** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall:** The side of a asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The outward facing sidewall bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the inner facing sidewall.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire:** A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure:** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure and shown on the tire placard.

**Radial Ply Tire:** A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim:** A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall:** The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating:** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction:** The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread:** The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators:** Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tire when only 2/32 inch of tread remains.

**UTQGS:** Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards, a tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight:** The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs. (68 kg) plus the rated cargo and luggage load.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire due to curb and accessory weight plus maximum occupant and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Normal Load on the Tire:** Load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight and dividing by 2.

**Vehicle Placard:** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure.
All season tires
HYUNDAI specifies all season tires on some models to provide good performance for use all year round, including snowy and icy road conditions. All season tires are identified by ALL SEASON and/or M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire sidewall. Snow tires have better snow traction than all season tires and may be more appropriate in some areas.

Summer tires
HYUNDAI specifies summer tires on some models to provide superior performance on dry roads. Summer tire performance is substantially reduced in snow and ice. Summer tires do not have the tire traction rating M+S (Mud and Snow) on the tire sidewall. If you plan to operate your vehicle in snowy or icy conditions, HYUNDAI recommends the use of snow tires or all season tires on all four wheels.

Snow tires
If you equip your car with snow tires, they should be the same size and have the same load capacity as the original tires. Snow tires should be installed on all four wheels; otherwise, poor handling may result. Snow tires should carry 4 psi (28 kPa) more air pressure than the pressure recommended for the standard tires on the tire label on the driver's side of the center pillar, or up to the maximum pressure shown on the tire sidewall, whichever is less. Do not drive faster than 75 mph (120 km/h) when your car is equipped with snow tires.

**WARNING - Snow or ice**
- When driving on roads covered with snow or ice, drive at less than 20 mph (30 km/h).
- Use the SAE “S” class or wire chains.
- If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to avoid contact with the vehicle body.
- To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.3~0.6 miles (0.5~1.0 km).
- Do not use tire chains on vehicles equipped with aluminum wheels. In unavoidable circumstance, use a wire type chain.
- Use wire chains less than 0.47 inches (12 mm) to prevent damage to the chain's connection.
Tire chains

Tire chains, if necessary, should be installed on the drive wheels (rear wheels).

Be sure that the chains are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

To minimize tire and chain wear, do not continue to use tire chains when they are no longer needed.

Radial-ply tires

Radial-ply tires provide improved tread life, road hazard resistance and smoother high speed ride. The radial-ply tires used on this vehicle are of belted construction, and are selected to complement the ride and handling characteristics of your vehicle. Radial-ply tires have the same load carrying capacity, as bias-ply or bias belted tires of the same size, and use the same recommended inflation pressure. Mixing of radial-ply tires with bias-ply or bias belted tires is not recommended. Any combinations of radial-ply and bias-ply or bias belted tires when used on the same vehicle will seriously deteriorate vehicle handling. The best rule to follow is: Identical radial-ply tires should always be used as a set of four.

Longer wearing tires can be more susceptible to irregular tread wear. It is very important to follow the tire rotation interval shown in this section to achieve the tread life potential of these tires. Cuts and punctures in radial-ply tires are repairable only in the tread area, because of sidewall flexing. Consult your tire dealer for radial-ply tire repairs.
A vehicle’s electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 4 fuse panels, two located in the driver’s side and passenger’s side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment.

If any of your vehicle’s lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver’s side fuse panel.

Before replacing a blown fuse, disconnect the negative battery cable.

Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Three kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, and fusible link for higher amperage ratings.

**WARNING - Fuse replacement**

- Never replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.
- A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly a fire.
- Never install a wire or aluminum foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and a possible fire.

**CAUTION**

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

**NOTICE**

The actual fuse/relay panel label may differ from equipped items.
CAUTION

- When replacing a blown fuse or relay with a new one, make sure the new fuse or relay fits tightly into the clips. The incomplete fastening fuse or relay may cause the vehicle wiring and electric systems damage and a possible fire.
- Do not remove fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts. The fuses, relays and terminals may be fastened incompletely, and it may cause a possible fire. If fuses, relays and terminals fastened with bolts or nuts are blown, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Do not input any other objects except fuses or relays into fuse/relay terminals such as a driver or wiring. It may cause contact failure and system malfunction.

Inner panel fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.
3. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the driver’s side panel or the front passenger’s side panel.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown.
   
   **Spare fuses are provided in the passenger compartment panel fuse panels (or in the engine compartment fuse panel).**

5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.

   **If you do not have a spare, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.**

   If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are OK, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

   **Fuse switch**

   Always put the transportation fuse switch at the ON position.

   If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as the audio and digital clock must be reset and the transmitter (or smart key) may not work properly.

   ✔ **CAUTION**

   • Always place the transportation fuse switch in the ON position while driving the vehicle.
   • Do not move the transportation fuse switch repeatedly. The fuse switch may be worn out.

   ✷ **NOTICE**

   If you need to park your vehicle for prolonged periods more than 1 month, move the transportation fuse switch to the OFF position to prevent the battery being discharged.
Maintenance

Engine compartment fuse replacement

1. Turn the ignition switch and all other switches off.
2. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling up.
3. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the front passenger's side panel.
4. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.

CAUTION
After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. If not, electrical failures may occur from water contact.

Main fuse

If the main fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:
1. Remove the fuse panel cover on the right side in the engine compartment.
2. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
4. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

* NOTICE
If the main fuse is blown, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.
Fuse/relay panel description
Inside the fuse/relay panel covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay name and capacity.

NOTICE
Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.
Driver’s side instrument fuse panel
### Instrument panel (Driver’s side fuse panel)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse Name</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PDM (B+)</td>
<td>25A</td>
<td>Smart Key Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAZARD</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Center Facia Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPB</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Electric Parking Brake Switch, Crash Pad Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF RECEIVER</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>RF Receiver, Security Indicator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDM (IG1)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Smart Key Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT LEVER (IG1)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>ATM Shift Lever IND.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/BAG IND.</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Instrument Cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMART KEY</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Start/Stop Button Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/HANDLE</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Steering Tilt &amp; Telescopic Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEMORY</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Power Trunk Lid Control Module, Relax Module, Driver/Passenger Door Module, Rear Door Module LH/RH, Passenger Door Lamp, Passenger Door Mood Lamp, Rear Door Lamp LH/RH, Rear Door Mood Lamp LH/RH Instrument Cluster, Driver IMS Control Module, BCM, Analogue Clock, LCD Panel Switch, A/C Control Module, Data Link Connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPMS</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Tire Pressure Monitoring Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVE H/REST</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Active Head Rest Sensor Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLUSTER</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP LAMP</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Stop Lamp Switch, Smart Key Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHIFT LEVER (B+)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Sport Mode Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTI MEDIA</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>A/V &amp; Navigation Head Unit, Front Monitor, Split Unit, MTS Module, Front DIS Switch, Rear Monitor LH/RH, Rear Console Switch, Rear Audio Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCM</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>BCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IG1</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>E/R Junction Box (Fuse - B/UP LAMP, ESC, EHPS, AFLS, INJECTOR (IG1), CRUISE (IG1), ECU (IG1), TCU)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 MODULE</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Head-Up Display, Rain Sensor, Rear Power Seat Switch LH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Maintenance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse Name</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F/LID</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Fuel Filler Door Switch, Front Console Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOLD’G MIRR</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Driver/Passenger Door Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/BAG</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>SRS Control Module, Driver/Passenger Pre-Safe Seat Belt, Center Facia Switch, PODS Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 MODULE</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>E/R Junction Box (FAM), Multifunction Switch Driver/Passenger Door Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECS</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>ECS Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO (IG1)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>A/V &amp; Navigation Head Unit, MTS Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFLS</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Head Lamp LH/RH, Adaptive Front Lighting Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/S HDL DRV</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Driver Power Door Latch, Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Door Lamp, Driver Door Mood Lamp, Driver Smart Key Outside Handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/HEATER RR</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Rear CCS Control Module LH, Rear Seat Warmer Module LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 MODULE</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Power Trunk Lid Control Module, Electro Chromic Mirror, A/T Console Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/S HDL RR</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Rear Power Door Latch LH, Rear Door Window Curtain LH, Rear Smart Key Outside Handle LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DR LOCK DRV</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Driver Door Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/HEATER DRV</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Driver CCS Control Module, Driver Seat Warmer Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DR LOCK PASS</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Passenger Door Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse Name</td>
<td>Fuse rating</td>
<td>Circuit Protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/TRUNK</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Power Trunk Lid Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/SEAT PASS</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Relax Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RH SAFETY POWER WINDOW</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Passenger Power Window Module, Rear Power Window Module RH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH SAFETY POWER WINDOW</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Driver Power Window Module, Rear Power Window Module LH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Passenger’s side instrument fuse panel
## Instrument panel (Passenger’s side fuse panel)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Protected component</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>USB CHARGE</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>USB Jack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IG2</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>E/R Junction Box Fuse (ECW 10A, WASHER 15A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/CON</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>E/R Junction Box (Blower Relay), A/C Control Module, Cluster Ion Gen, LCD Panel Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MODULE</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Around View Module, Camera Module, Instrument panel LH(Instrument Cluster, Sunroof Module, Head-Up Display)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/SEAT RR</td>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Rear LH Power Seat Relay Box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-SHIFTER</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>USB Jack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDM(ACC)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>BCM, Smart Key Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUNROOF</td>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Sunroof Module, Sunroof Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDM (IG2)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>BCM, Smart Key Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POWER OUTLET RR</td>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Rear Power Outlet (5:5 Seat), Rear Console Lamp (5:5 Seat), Rear Power Outlet #1/#2(6:4 Seat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERIOR LAMP</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>E/R Junction Box (Power Outlet Relay FR), Front Room Lamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/S HDL RR</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Rear Power Door Latch RH, Rear Door Curtain RH, Rear Smart Key Outside Handle RH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Analogue Clock, Split Unit, Front Monitor, Around View Module, Camera Module, MTS Module, Front DIS Switch, AMP, Rear Monitor LH/RH, Rear Audio Switch, Rear Console Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEG SUPPORT RR</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Rear RH Power Seat Relay Box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/HEATER PASS</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Passenger CCS Control Module, Passenger Seat Warmer Module (W/O CCS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTD STRG</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Steering Wheel Heated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICE BOX</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Cool box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O/S HDL PASS</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Passenger Power Door Latch, Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Smart Key Outside Handle RH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/HEATER RR</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Rear CCS Control Module RH, Rear Seat Warmer Module RH (W/O CCS)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Engine compartment main fuse panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse Name</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WIPER (B+)</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Electronic Control Wiper Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM 2 (B+)</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>FAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAM 1 (B+)</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>FAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>START</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Start Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WASHER</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Washer Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIPER (IG2)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Electronic Control Wiper Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEICER</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Deicer Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRUISE (B+)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>H/Lamp Relay, Smart Cruise Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORN</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Horn Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPB 2</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Electric Parking Brake Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPB 1</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Electric Parking Brake Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/CON</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>A/C Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLOWER</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>Blower Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESAFETY SEAT BELT LH</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>Driver Pre-Safe Seat Belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR HTD</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>RR HTD Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRESAFETY SEAT BELT RH</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>Passenger Pre-Safe Seat Belt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECU (IG1)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>ECM, Alternator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESC</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>ESC Module, E/R Fuse &amp; Relay Box (Multipurpose Check Connector)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHPS</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>EHPS Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFLS</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Head Lamp LH/RH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCU</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>TCM, Transmission Range Switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTD MIRR</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse Name</td>
<td>Fuse rating</td>
<td>Circuit Protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F/PUMP</td>
<td>20A</td>
<td>F/Pump Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROOM LAMP</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Room Lamp Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECU (B+)</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>ECM, TCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B/UP LAMP</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Steering Angle Sensor, B/UP LP RLY’ S’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRUISE (IG1)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Smart Cruise Control Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INJECTOR (IG1)</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Injector Drive Box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H/LAMP LH</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Head Lamp LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H/LAMP RH</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Head Lamp RH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 SENSOR</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>ECM, F/Pump Relay, Camshaft Position Sensor (BANK1/BANK2) (Intake/Exhaust)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 SENSOR</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>Canister Close Valve, Oil Control Valve #1 ~ #4, E/R Fuse &amp; Relay Box (C/Fan Relay), Purge Control Solenoid Valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 SENSOR</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>ECM, Oxygen Sensor #1 ~ #4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INJECTOR (B+)</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Injector Drive Box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGN COIL</td>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Condenser #1/#2, Ignition Coil #1 ~ #8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECU</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>ECU Relay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Engine compartment sub fuse panel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuse Name</th>
<th>Fuse rating</th>
<th>Circuit Protected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>200A</td>
<td>Alternator, E/R Fuse &amp; Relay Box (Fuse - I/P POWER RH, EHPS, C/FAN, PDM (ACC), ECS, TRUNK, AMP, POWER OUTLET FRT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/P POWER LH</td>
<td>80A</td>
<td>Smart Junction Box LH (Fuse - PDM (B+), HAZARD, EPB, RF RECEIVER, SMART KEY, P/HANDLE, TPMS, STOP LAMP, SHIFT LEVER (B+), P/SEAT PASS, RH SAFETY POWER WINDOW, MULTI MEDIA, LH SAFETY POWER WINDOW, 1 MODULE, F/LID, ECS, O/S HDL DRV, S/HEATER RR, O/S HDL RR, DR LOCK DRV, S/HEATER DRV, DR LOCK PASS, P/TRUNK, Leak Current Autocut Device)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/P POWER RH</td>
<td>60A</td>
<td>I/P Junction Box RH (Fuse - USB CHARGE, P/SEAT RR, SUNROOF, O/S HDL RR, LEG SUPPORT RR, S/HEATER PASS, O/S HDL PASS, S/HEATER RR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C/FAN</td>
<td>70A</td>
<td>C/FAN Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EHPS</td>
<td>80A</td>
<td>EHPS Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESC 1</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>ESC Module, Multipurpose Check Connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESC 2</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>ESC Module, Multipurpose Check Connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDM (IG1)</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>PDM (IG1) Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDM (IG2)</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>PDM (IG2) Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P/SEAT (DRV)</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>Driver IMS Control Module, Driver Lumbar Support Valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECS</td>
<td>40A</td>
<td>ECS Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMP</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>AMP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDM (ACC)</td>
<td>30A</td>
<td>PDM (ACC) Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP LAMP</td>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Stop Signal Electronic Module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B/UP LAMP</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>B/UP LAMP Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POWER OUTLET FRT</td>
<td>25A</td>
<td>POWER OUTLET FRT Relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUNK</td>
<td>10A</td>
<td>TRUNK Relay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIGHT BULBS

⚠️ WARNING - Working on the lights
Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the ignition switch is turned to the LOCK position and turn off the lights to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

Use only the bulbs of the specified wattage.

⚠️ CAUTION
Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electric wiring system.

⚠️ CAUTION
If you don’t have necessary tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise, consult an authorized EQUIUS dealer. In many cases, it is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true if you have to remove the headlight assembly to get to the bulb(s). Removing/installing the headlight assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

✴ NOTICE
After heavy, driving rain or washing, headlight and taillight lenses could appear frosty. This condition is caused by the temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside. This is similar to the condensation on your windows inside your vehicle during the rain and doesn’t indicate a problem with your vehicle. If the water leaks into the lamp bulb circuitry, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUIUS dealer.
Headlight, position light, turn signal light, side marker light and front fog light bulb replacement

1. Open the hood.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Push the top of the fastener to remove the cover.
4. Remove the cover.
5. Pull out the cover (if equipped).
6. Insert a screw driver into the hold (1) and lift up the screw driver while pulling out the cover (2).

(1) Position light
(2) Headlight (High)
(3) Headlight (Low)
(4) Front side marker light
(5) Front turn signal light
(6) Front fog light
7. Remove the fastener and screw under the wheel arch.

8. Pull out the bumper.

9. Remove 4 fasteners on the grille and the bolt.
10. Remove the front bumper.
11. Be careful not to break up the clips on the inside of the front bumper.

12. If you want to replace the right side head lamp, remove the bolts then remove the air cleaner.

13. Remove the mounting bolts.
14. Pull the headlight assembly out to the front of the vehicle.
15. Remove the clips.
16. Disconnect the power connector(s) from the back of the headlight assembly.

Headlight (HID type) bulb replacement (if equipped)
If the light bulb is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ WARNING - HID
Headlight low beam (if equipped)
Do not attempt to replace or inspect the low beam (XENON bulb) due to electric shock danger. If the low beam (XENON bulb) is not working, have your vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ CAUTION
If your vehicle is equipped with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlights, these headlights contain mercury. So if you need to have your vehicle disposed, you should remove the HID Headlights before disposal. The removed HID headlights should be recycled, re-used or disposed as hazardous waste.

★ NOTICE
HID lamps have superior performance vs. halogen bulbs. HID lamps are estimated by the manufacturer to last twice as long or longer than halogen bulbs depending on their frequency of use. They will probably require replacement at some point in the life of the vehicle. Cycling the headlamps on and off more than typical use will shorten HID lamps life. HID lamps do not fail in the same manner as halogen incandescent lamps. If a headlamp goes out after a period of operation but will immediately relight when the headlamp switch is cycled it is likely the HID lamp needs to be replaced. HID lighting components are more complex than conventional halogen bulbs thus have higher replacement cost.
**Headlight (bulb type), front turn signal, position, side marker and fog light bulbs**

If the light bulb is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Headlight bulb**

(Continued)

- Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

**WARNING - Halogen bulbs**

- Halogen bulbs contain pressurized gas that will produce fragment of glass if broken.
- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids.

(Continued)
17. Remove the headlight bulb cover by turning it counter clockwise.
18. Disconnect the headlight bulb socket connector.
19. Unsnap the headlight bulb retaining wire by depressing the end and pushing it upward.
20. Remove the bulb from the headlight assembly.
21. Install a new headlight bulb and snap the headlight bulb retaining wire into position by aligning the wire with the groove on the bulb.
22. Connect the headlight bulb socket connector.
23. Install the headlight bulb cover by turning it clockwise.
24. Connect the power connector(s) to the back of the headlight assembly.
25. Reinstall the headlight assembly to the body of the vehicle.

* NOTICE
If the headlight aiming adjustment is necessary after the headlight assembly is reinstalled, consult an authorized EQUUS dealer.

Turn signal light - bulb type
If the light bulb is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

OVI079111L

CAUTION
If the headlight (Low) is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
**Position light, Front fog light**
If the light bulb is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Side repeater light bulb replacement (if equipped)**
If the light bulb is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**Rear combination light bulb replacement**
(1) Stop, tail light and side marker
(2) Rear turn signal light
(3) Back-up light
**Maintenance**

*Rear back-up light*
If the light is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

*Turn signal, stop and tail light*
If the light is not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

**High mounted stop light**

1. *Remove the rear seat*

5 Seater
1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the rear seat cushion.
3. Loosen the mounting bolts, then remove the rear seat back.

Tightening torque:
34.3~53.9 N.m
3.5~5.5 kgf.m,
25.3~39.8 lb-ft

4. Disconnect the connector.

5. Push the hook, disconnect the main connector.
6. Loosen the mounting bolts, then disconnect the connector.
7. Remove the side seat.

4 Seater
1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
2. Remove the rear seat cushion.

3. Loosen the mounting bolts, then remove the rear seat back.

Tightening torque:
- 34.3~53.9 N.m
- 3.5~5.5 kgf.m
- 25.3~39.8 lb-ft
2. Remove the rear package tray trim

1. Remove the rear door scuff trim.

4. Disconnect the connectors and hose.

2. Loosen the mounting screw, then remove the rear wheel house trim.
3. Remove the cap, then loosen the mounting screw.
4. Remove the rear pillar trim.
5. Push the hook, remove the rear seat belt cover.
6. Remove the rear seat belt lower anchor.

Tightening torque:
- 39.2~53.9 N.m
- 4.0~5.5 kgf.m
- 28.9~39.8 lb-ft
7. Loosen the mounting screws, then remove the package tray trim.

3. **Replace the high mounted stop light**

1. Remove the high mounted stop lamp after removing screws.
2. Install a new light.

4. **Installation**

   Install in the reverse order of removal.

---

License plate lamp replacement

1. Open the trunk.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Using a screwdriver, remove the trunk lid latch cover(1).
4. Using a screwdriver, remove the trunk lid switch(2), and disconnect the connector.
5. Detach the clip and fastener(3), then remove the trunk lid cover(4).
6. Remove the clips and screws.
7. Remove the trunk lid trim.

CAUTION
Be careful not to damage to the fasteners between the trunk lid trim and trunk lid.

8. Remove the nuts and disconnect the connectors.

9. Remove the bolts and remove the trunk key hold.
10. Remove the trunk lid panel.

**CAUTION**

*Be careful not to damage to the fasteners between the trunk lid panel and trunk lid.*

11. Remove the bolts and remove the license plate lamp.

12. Install a new light.

13. Installation is the reverse of removal.

---

**Interior light bulb replacement**

1. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, gently pry the lens from the interior light housing.

2. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.
3. Install a new bulb in the socket.
4. Align the lens tabs with the interior light housing notches and snap the lens into place.
5. If the map lamp and room lamp are not operating, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ CAUTION
*Use care not to dirty or damage lens, lens tab, and plastic housings.*

🌟 NOTICE
If the luggage lamp does not operate, have the vehicle checked by an authorized EQUUS dealer.

⚠️ WARNING
Prior to working on the Interior Lights, ensure that the “OFF” button is depressed to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.
APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution
It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance
Washing
To help protect your vehicle’s finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle’s finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
- Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.
- To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

⚠️ WARNING - Wet brakes
After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.
A good coat of wax is a barrier between your paint and contaminate. Keeping a good coat of wax on your vehicle will help protect it.

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint. Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer’s instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing is not recommended. It may cause the failure of electrical circuits or engine and related part located in the engine compartment.
- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components and the air duct inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

⚠️ CAUTION
- Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminum parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discoloration or paint deterioration.
Finish damage repair
Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

★ NOTICE
If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

Bright-metal maintenance
• To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
• To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
• During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance
Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.
Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

⚠️ WARNING
After washing the vehicle, test the brakes while driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly while maintaining a slow forward speed.
Aluminum or chrome wheel maintenance
The aluminum or chrome wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminum or chrome wheels. They may scratch or damage the finish.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads. This helps prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any alkaline or acid detergent. It may damage and corrode the aluminum or chrome wheels coated with a clear protective finish.

Corrosion protection
Protecting your vehicle from corrosion
By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, we produce cars of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion
The most common causes of corrosion on your car are:
- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the car.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas
If you live in an area where your car is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion
Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the car surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain the moisture and promote corrosion.
High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your car clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the car.

**To help prevent corrosion**

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc.—, you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your car at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.

- When cleaning underneath the car, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- Keep your car clean

  The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your car clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the car is particularly important.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

- **Keep your garage dry**

  Don't park your car in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your car in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.
Keep paint and trim in good condition
Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings: Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don’t neglect the interior
Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure the carpeting is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilizers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the car.
These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

Interior care

**Interior general precautions**
Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discoloration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vinyl.

**CAUTION**
- *Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.*
- *When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the color of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.*

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

**Vinyl**
Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

**Fabric**
Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its color can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

**CAUTION**
*Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.*
Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

⚠️ CAUTION
Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.
EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Owner's Handbook & Warranty Information booklet in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all applicable emission regulations.

There are three emission control systems, as follows.

1. Crankcase emission control system

   The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control (including ORVR: Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery) system

   The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapors from escaping into the atmosphere.

   The ORVR system is designed to allow the vapors from the fuel tank to be loaded into a canister while refueling at the gas station, preventing the escape of fuel vapors into the atmosphere.

Caution for the Inspection and Maintenance Test (With Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.
- After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.

In order to assure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your car inspected and maintained by an authorized EQUUS dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.
**Canister**

Fuel vapors generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapors absorbed in the canister are drawn into the engine intake manifold through the purge control solenoid valve.

**Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)**

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

---

**3. Exhaust emission control system**

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions while maintaining good vehicle performance.

**Vehicle modifications**

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

  In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- Use of unauthorized electric devices may cause: Abnormal vehicle operation, Wire damage, Battery discharge, Fire.

  Be careful not to damage your vehicle by use of unauthorized electric devices.

---

**Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)**

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.
Maintenance

**WARNING - Exhaust**

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colorless and odorless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions on this page to avoid CO poisoning.

**CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING**

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

*Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)*

**WARNING - Fire**

- A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as grass, vegetation, paper, leaves, etc.
- The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic; you may get burned. Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle or do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.
Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device. Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for gasoline engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the ignition off and descending steep grades in gear with the ignition off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorized EQUUS dealer.
- Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. If you run out of gasoline, it could cause the engine to misfire and result in excessive loading of the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle. Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.
CALIFORNIA PERCHLORATE NOTICE
Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Notice to California Vehicle Dismantlers:
Perchlorate containing materials, such as air bag inflators, seatbelt pretensioners and keyless remote entry batteries, must be disposed of according to Title 22 California Code of Regulations Section 67384.10 (a).
## Specifications, Consumer information and Reporting safety defects

- Dimensions ........................................ 8-2
- Bulb wattage ...................................... 8-2
- Tires and wheels ................................. 8-3
- Recommended lubricants and capacities .... 8-4
  - Recommended SAE viscosity number ....... 8-5
- Vehicle identification number (VIN) ........ 8-6
- Vehicle certification label ..................... 8-6
- Tire specification and pressure label ....... 8-7
- Engine number .................................... 8-7
- Refrigerant label ................................. 8-7
- Consumer information ........................... 8-8
- Reporting safety defects ....................... 8-9
- Binding arbitration (U.S.A only) ............ 8-9
### DIMENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>in (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overall length</td>
<td>203.1 (5160)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall width</td>
<td>74.4 (1890)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall height</td>
<td>58.7 (1490)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front tread</td>
<td>63.8 (1620)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear tread</td>
<td>64.1 (1627)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>119.9 (3045)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### BULB WATTAGE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light Bulb</th>
<th>Wattage</th>
<th>Bulb, Cap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headlights (Low) (HID)</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>D1S, PK32d-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headlights (High)</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>H7, PX26d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front turn signal lights</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Position lights</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side repeater lights*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front fog lights*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Welcome light*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear fog light*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stop and tail lights</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tail light</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear turn signal lights</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-up lights</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High mounted stop light*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License plate lights</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map lamps</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Room lamps</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luggage lamp</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glove box lamp</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanity mirror lamps*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Door courtesy lamps*</td>
<td>LED</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* : If equipped
# TIRES AND WHEELS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Wheel size</th>
<th>Inflation pressure kPa (psi)</th>
<th>Wheel lug nut torque lb•ft (kg•m, N•m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Normal load *</td>
<td>Maximum load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full size tire</td>
<td>P245/45R19</td>
<td>8.0J×19</td>
<td>205 (30)</td>
<td>205 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>P275/40R19</td>
<td>9.0J×19</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>205 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compact spare tire</td>
<td>T155/70R19</td>
<td>4.0Tx19</td>
<td>420 (60)</td>
<td>420 (60)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Normal load : Up to 3 persons

⚠️ CAUTION

When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Using tires of a different size can damage the related parts or make it work irregularly.

* NOTICE

It is permissible to add 3psi to the standard tire pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tires typically loose 1psi for every 12°F temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, re-check your tire pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.
**RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES**

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy. These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lubricant</th>
<th>Volume</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill)</td>
<td>7.61 US qt. (7.2 l)</td>
<td>API Service SM*3, ILSAC GF-4 or above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommends</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic transmission fluid</td>
<td>10.67 US qt. (10.1 l)</td>
<td>GS ATF SP-IV-RR, HYUNDAI genuine ATF SP-IV-RR or other brands meeting the above specification approved by HYUNDAI Motor Co.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power steering fluid</td>
<td>0.95 US qt. (0.9 l)</td>
<td>Pentosin CHF 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coolant</td>
<td>7.45 US qt. (7.05 l)</td>
<td>Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene glycol base coolant for aluminum radiator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brake fluid</td>
<td>0.7 ~ 0.8 US qt. (0.7~0.8 l)</td>
<td>FMVSS116 DOT-3 or DOT-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear differential oil</td>
<td>1.48 US qt. (1.4 l)</td>
<td>Hypoid gear oil API GL-5, SAE 75W/90 (SHELL SPIRAX X Equivalent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuel</td>
<td>20.34 US gal. (77 l)</td>
<td>Unleaded gasoline</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on the next page.

*2 Engine oils labeled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

*3 If the API service SM engine oil is not available in your country, you are able to use API service SL.
Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather.

Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engine Oil *1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-20 (API Service SM / ILSAC GF-4). However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your car and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc. The number is punched on the floor under the front passenger's seat. To check the number, open the cover.

The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the dashboard. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windshield from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL

The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's side center pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).
Specifications, Consumer information and Reporting safety defects

TIRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL

The tires supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving. The tire label located on the driver's side center pillar gives the tire pressures recommended for your car.

ENGINE NUMBER

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown in the drawing.

REFRIGERANT LABEL

The refrigerant label is located on the underside of the hood. The label contains the following information:
- Type of refrigerant
- Amount of refrigerant
CONSUMER INFORMATION

This consumer information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation. Your EQUUS dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

Hyundai motor vehicles are designed and manufactured to meet or exceed all applicable safety standards.

For your safety, however, we strongly urge you to read and follow all directions in this Owner's Manual, particularly the information under the headings "NOTICE", "CAUTION" and "WARNING".

If, after reading this manual, you have any questions regarding the operation of your vehicle, please contact your nearest Hyundai Motor America Regional Office as listed in the following:


Eastern Region
1122 Cranbury South River Road
Jamesburg, NJ 08831
(877) 378-8727

Southern Region: Florida, Georgia, Maryland, North Carolina, South Carolina, Virginia, West Virginia.

Southern Region
3025 Chastain Meadows Parkway
suite 100 Marietta, GA 30066
(877) 378-8727

South Central Region: Alabama, Arkansas, Louisiana, Mississippi, New Mexico, Oklahoma, Tennessee, Texas.

South Central Region
1421 South Beltline Road, Suite 400
Coppell, TX 75019
(877) 378-8727

Eastern Region
1122 Cranbury South River Road
Jamesburg, NJ 08831
(877) 378-8727

Southern Region
3025 Chastain Meadows Parkway
suite 100 Marietta, GA 30066
(877) 378-8727

South Central Region
1421 South Beltline Road, Suite 400
Coppell, TX 75019
(877) 378-8727

Central Region: Illinois, Indiana, Iowa, Kentucky, Michigan, Minnesota, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, Ohio, Wisconsin, Kansas, Missouri.

Central Region
1705 Sequoia Drive
Aurora, Illinois 60506
(877) 378-8727


Western Region
10550 Talbert Avenue
P.O.Box 20850
Fountain Valley, California 92728-0850
(877) 378-8727
REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying HYUNDAI MOTOR AMERICA. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or HYUNDAI MOTOR AMERICA.
To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

BINDING ARBITRATION (U.S.A ONLY)
Any claim or dispute you may have related to your vehicle's warranty or the duties contemplated under the warranty, including claims related to the refund or partial refund of your vehicle's purchase price (excluding personal injury or product liability claims), shall be resolved by binding arbitration. Binding arbitration shall be administered by and through the American Arbitration Association (AAA).
You will not be responsible for paying filing and hearing fees above $275.00. All other arbitration costs shall be borne by Hyundai Motor America. You are not responsible to pay any of the costs Hyundai incurs. This Binding Arbitration Agreement shall not deprive you of any remedies available to you under applicable law. The parties are waiving their right to seek remedies in court, including the right to a jury trial.
This Binding Arbitration Agreement shall be governed by and interpreted under the Federal Arbitration Act, 9 U.S.C. sections 1-16. Judgment upon any award may be entered in any court having jurisdiction.
You may revoke this Arbitration Agreement by (1) written notice or (2) electronic notice. Written notice must be delivered (via certified mail) to Hyundai Motor America, Attn: Consumer Affairs, 10550 Talbert Avenue, P.O. Box 20849, Fountain Valley, CA 92728-0849.
Electronic notice must be submitted at the following website address: http://warranty-arbitration.hyundaiUSA.com. Notice must be received within 90 days after you purchase your vehicle.